# Hartree-Fock methods of Quantum Chemistry 

János Ángyán

## Contents

1 Introduction ..... 4
2 Historical Overview ..... 5
3 Variation theorem ..... 5
3.1 Variation theorem II ..... 6
3.2 Stationary-value conditions ..... 6
4 Separation of electronic and nuclear motions ..... 7
4.1 Born-Oppenheimer approximation ..... 8
4.2 Breakdown of the Born-Oppenheimer approximation ..... 9
5 Electron Hamiltonian and wave function ..... 9
5.1 Electron spin ..... 10
5.2 Spin operators and spin functions ..... 10
5.3 Total spin operators ..... 10
5.4 Spin functions of a two-electron system ..... 11
5.5 Space and spin orbitals ..... 11
6 Density matrices ..... 12
6.1 Reduced density matrices ..... 12
7 Construction of the wave function ..... 13
7.1 Expansion theorem ..... 14
7.2 Configuration Interaction ..... 14
8 Method of determinants ..... 15
8.1 Permutation (symmetric) group ..... 15
8.2 Antisymmetrizer ..... 16
8.3 Why antisymmetrizer? ..... 17
9 Determinant wave function ..... 17
9.1 Invariance properties of the determinant wave function ..... 17
9.2 Physical meaning of the determinant wave function ..... 18
10 Matrix elements between determinant wave functions ..... 19
10.1 Laplace expansion formulae ..... 20
10.2 Overlap of two determinants ..... 21
10.3 Matrix elements of one-electron operators ..... 21
10.4 Matrix elements of two-electron operators ..... 21
10.5 Notations for two-electron integrals ..... 22
10.6 Summary of matrix element rules ..... 22
10.7 Slater rules ..... 23
10.8 Variation of a determinant wave function ..... 24
11 Method of Second Quantization ..... 25
11.1 Representations of determinant wave functions ..... 25
11.2 Fock space ..... 25
11.3 Creation of electrons ..... 26
11.4 Annihilation of electrons ..... 26
11.5 Commutation relations ..... 27
11.6 Adjoint relations ..... 27
11.7 Non-orthogonal functions ..... 28
11.8 Properties of creation and annihilation operators: Summary ..... 29
11.9 Particle number operator ..... 29
11.10Representation of operators ..... 30
11.11One-electron operators ..... 30
11.12Two-electron operators ..... 31
11.13Reduced density matrices ..... 32
11.14Hamiltonian and energy expressions ..... 33
11.15Calculation of matrix elements ..... 34
11.16Matrix elements between single determinants ..... 34
11.17Fermi vacuum ..... 35
11.18Slater rules - an example ..... 35
11.19Energy of a single determinant ..... 36
12 Hartree-Fock theory ..... 36
12.1 Brillouin theorem ..... 37
12.2 Unrestricted Hartree-Fock equations ..... 37
12.3 Canonical UHF equations ..... 39
12.4 Unrestricted Hartree-Fock energy expression ..... 40
12.5 Spin properties of the UHF wave function ..... 41
12.6 Symmetry dilemma ..... 42
12.7 Restricted Hartree-Fock equations ..... 42
12.8 RHF energy expression ..... 42
12.9 Orbital energies ..... 43
12.10Koopmans theorem ..... 43
12.11Excitation operators - Generalities ..... 44
12.12Generalized Koopmans theorem ..... 44
12.13How good is the Koopmans theorem? ..... 45
12.14Excited states ..... 46
13 EOM for excited states ..... 47
13.1 Hartree-Fock density matrix ..... 48
13.2 Natural orbitals ..... 49
13.3 Two-particle density matrix for a HF wave function ..... 49
14 Hartree-Fock-Hall-Roothan equations ..... 50
14.1 P-matrix ..... 51
14.2 Population analysis ..... 52
14.3 Potential-fitted charges ..... 53
14.4 Covalent bond orders ..... 53
14.5 Implementation of the HFR equations: SCF procedure ..... 54
14.6 Direct SCF procedure ..... 55
14.7 Basis sets ..... 55
14.8 Product theorem for Gaussian functions ..... 56
14.9 Contracted Gaussian functions ..... 56
14.10Second Quantized Hamiltonian in AO basis ..... 57
14.11Hellmann-Feynman theorem ..... 58
14.12Hartree-Fock gradients ..... 59
14.13BSSE ..... 60
14.14Response properties ..... 60
14.15General wave function variation ..... 61
14.16Coupled Hartree-Fock equations ..... 62
15 Comparison of RHF and UHF solutions ..... 63
15.1 RHF solution of minimal basis $\mathbf{H}_{2}$ ..... 63
15.2 UHF orbitals of minimal basis $\mathbf{H}_{2}$ ..... 64
15.3 UHF solutions for minimal basis $\mathbf{H}_{2}$ ..... 65
15.4 Stability of the RHF/UHF solutions ..... 66
15.5 Behaviour at dissociation ..... 66
16 Configuration interaction method ..... 67
17 Structure of the CI matrix ..... 68
17.1 Doubly excited CI ..... 69
17.2 Approximate solutions of the DCI equations ..... 69
17.3 Natural orbitals ..... 70
17.4 Minimal basis $\mathbf{H}_{2}$ molecule ..... 71
17.5 DCI of the minimal basis $\mathbf{H}_{2}$ ..... 72
17.6 Approximate CI solution of minimal basis $\mathbf{H}_{2}$ ..... 73
17.7 Size-consistency problem ..... 74
17.8 Full CI of a non-interacting $\mathbf{H}_{2}$ dimer ..... 75
18 Rayleigh-Schroedinger perturbation theory ..... 76
18.1 Schroedinger equation with perturbation ..... 76
18.2 Iterative solution of the perturbed Schroedinger equation ..... 77
$18.3 \mathbf{H}$-atom in electric field ..... 77
18.4 Rayleigh-Schroedinger perturbation expansion ..... 78
18.5 Explicit formulae at low orders ..... 78
18.6 Energy with the first-order wave function ..... 79
18.7 Deformation energy and perturbation energy ..... 80
18.8 Dalgarno's (2n+1) theorem ..... 80
18.9 Pertubational correction of expectation values ..... 81
18.10Partitioning method ..... 81
19 RSPT treatment of intramolecular correlation ..... 83
19.1 Third order MBPT energy ..... 84
19.2 Comparison with the partitioning method ..... 85
19.3 Partial summation of MBPT series ..... 86
19.4 MBPT correlation energy of minimal basis $\mathbf{H}_{2}$ ..... 86
19.5 Size-consistency ..... 87
19.6 Size-consistent methods ..... 87
19.7 Local MP2 ..... 88

## 1 Introduction

Explicit use of the wave function

- strict definition of any electronic state with any multiplicity
- density matrices (1st and 2nd order) calculated from wave function

Hierarchy of "infinitely improvable" approximations

- one-electron basis set
- correlation energy


## Bibliography

A. Szabo and N.S. Ostlund Modern Quantum Chemistry: Introduction to Advanced Electronic Structure Theory McMillan, New York (1982)
R. McWeeny Methods of Molecular Quantum Mechanics, Academic Press, London (1989)
P.R. Surján Second Quantized Approach to Quantum Chemistry, Springer Verlag, Heidelberg, (1989)

Mayer István Fejezetek a kvantumkémiából, BME, Budapest (1987)
B. Silvi Cours de DEA, Université P.\& M. Curie, Paris (1992)

## 2 Historical Overview

Schrödinger 1926

Hartree 1928
Fock 1930

Moller-Plesset 1934

Slater 1951

Cizek 1968
Kohn Sham 1965 Sham 1971
GGA

Becke 1993
HF, CC, MBPT,CI
Hybrid
KS DFT
True DFT

## 3 Variation theorem

The expectation value of the energy is equal to the eigenvalue of the Schrödinger equation

$$
\begin{equation*}
\hat{H} \Psi=E \Psi \tag{1}
\end{equation*}
$$

Multiply by $\Psi^{*}$ and integrate:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\langle\Psi| \hat{H}|\Psi\rangle=E\langle\Psi \mid \Psi\rangle \quad E=\frac{\langle\Psi| \hat{H}|\Psi\rangle}{\langle\Psi \mid \Psi\rangle} \tag{2}
\end{equation*}
$$

The lowest energy belongs to the exact ground state wave function, i.e. for any approximate $\tilde{\Psi}$

$$
\begin{equation*}
E=\frac{\langle\tilde{\Psi}| \hat{H}|\tilde{\Psi}\rangle}{\langle\tilde{\Psi} \mid \tilde{\Psi}\rangle} \geq E_{0} \tag{3}
\end{equation*}
$$

Eigenfunctions $\Psi_{k}$ of the Hamiltonian form a complete, orthonormal basis

$$
\begin{gather*}
\tilde{\Psi}=\sum_{k} c_{k} \Psi_{k}  \tag{4}\\
\langle\tilde{\Psi} \mid \tilde{\Psi}\rangle=\sum_{i} \sum_{j} c_{i}^{*} c_{j}\left\langle\Psi_{i} \mid \Psi_{j}\right\rangle=\sum_{i}\left|c_{i}\right|^{2}  \tag{5}\\
\langle\tilde{\Psi}| \hat{H}|\tilde{\Psi}\rangle=\sum_{i} \sum_{j} c_{i}^{*} c_{j} E_{j}\left\langle\Psi_{i} \mid \Psi_{j}\right\rangle=\sum_{i}\left|c_{i}\right|^{2} E_{i} \tag{6}
\end{gather*}
$$

Energy

$$
\begin{equation*}
E=\frac{\langle\tilde{\Psi}| \hat{H}|\tilde{\Psi}\rangle}{\langle\tilde{\Psi} \mid \tilde{\Psi}\rangle}=\frac{\sum_{i}\left|c_{i}\right|^{2} E_{i}}{\sum_{i}\left|c_{i}\right|^{2}} \tag{7}
\end{equation*}
$$

Since $E_{i} \geq E_{0}$

$$
\begin{equation*}
E=\frac{\langle\tilde{\Psi}| \hat{H}|\tilde{\Psi}\rangle}{\langle\tilde{\Psi} \mid \tilde{\Psi}\rangle} \geq \frac{\sum_{i}\left|c_{i}\right|^{2} E_{0}}{\sum_{i}\left|c_{i}\right|^{2}}=E_{0} \tag{8}
\end{equation*}
$$

The energy of an approximate wave function is upper bound of the exact energy.

### 3.1 Variation theorem II

The Schrödinger equation can be considered as a result of the variation theorem: we are looking for the wave function that makes stationary the energy functional

$$
\begin{equation*}
\delta E=\delta\left[\frac{\langle\tilde{\Psi}| \hat{H}|\tilde{\Psi}\rangle}{\langle\tilde{\Psi} \mid \tilde{\Psi}\rangle}\right]=0 \tag{9}
\end{equation*}
$$

First variation

$$
\begin{equation*}
\delta E=\frac{\langle\delta \Psi| \hat{H}|\Psi\rangle\langle\Psi \mid \Psi\rangle-\langle\Psi| \hat{H}|\Psi\rangle\langle\delta \Psi \mid \Psi\rangle}{\langle\Psi \mid \Psi\rangle^{2}}+\text { c.c. }=0 \tag{10}
\end{equation*}
$$

This expression and its complex conjugate should be separately zero

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{\langle\delta \Psi| \hat{H}|\Psi\rangle\langle\Psi \mid \Psi\rangle}{\langle\Psi \mid \Psi\rangle}-\langle\delta \Psi \mid \Psi\rangle \frac{\langle\Psi| \hat{H}|\Psi\rangle}{\langle\Psi \mid \Psi\rangle}=0 \tag{11}
\end{equation*}
$$

we obtain another form of the variation theorem

$$
\begin{equation*}
\langle\delta \Psi| \hat{H}-E|\Psi\rangle=0 \tag{12}
\end{equation*}
$$

and since $\delta \Psi$ is arbitrary

$$
\begin{equation*}
(\hat{H}-E) \Psi=0 \tag{13}
\end{equation*}
$$

### 3.2 Stationary-value conditions

The variation theorem provides a necessary but not sufficient condition to have a minimum of the energy. Let us examine the general Taylor expansion of the energy functional.
Denote the wave function, containing the independent parameters $p_{1}, p_{2}, \ldots$, by

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Psi\left(p_{1}, p_{2}, \ldots \mid \boldsymbol{x}_{1}, \boldsymbol{x}_{2}, \ldots \boldsymbol{x}_{N}\right) \tag{14}
\end{equation*}
$$

and the energy functional

$$
\begin{equation*}
E=H\left(p_{1}, p_{2}, \ldots\right)=\frac{\langle\Psi| \hat{H}|\Psi\rangle}{\langle\Psi \mid \Psi\rangle} \tag{15}
\end{equation*}
$$

The differential $d H$ is:

$$
\begin{equation*}
d H=\sum_{j}\left\{\frac{\langle\Psi| \hat{H} \left\lvert\, \frac{\partial \Psi}{\left.\partial p_{j}\right\rangle}\right.}{\langle\Psi \mid \Psi\rangle}-\frac{\langle\Psi| \hat{H}|\Psi\rangle\langle\Psi| \frac{\partial \Psi}{\left.\partial p_{j}\right\rangle}}{\langle\Psi \mid \Psi\rangle^{2}}\right\} d p_{j}+\text { c.c. }+\ldots \tag{16}
\end{equation*}
$$

The term in curly brackets is just the $j$-th component of the general "gradient vector" of the energy surface $E=H\left(p_{1}, p_{2}, \ldots\right)$. With the notations

$$
\begin{equation*}
(H \nabla)_{j}=\frac{\langle\Psi|(\hat{H}-H)\left|\frac{\partial \Psi}{\partial p_{j}}\right\rangle}{\langle\Psi \mid \Psi\rangle} \quad(\nabla H)_{j}=\frac{\left\langle\frac{\partial \Psi}{\partial p_{j}}\right|(\hat{H}-H)|\Psi\rangle}{\langle\Psi \mid \Psi\rangle} \tag{17}
\end{equation*}
$$

the stationary-value conditions can be formulated as

$$
\begin{equation*}
(H \nabla)_{j}=(\nabla H)_{j}=0 \quad \text { for all } j \tag{18}
\end{equation*}
$$

Using the shorthand notation $\frac{\partial \Psi}{\partial p_{j}}=\Psi^{j}$ etc. the second derivatives are

$$
\begin{align*}
(\nabla \nabla H)_{j k} & =\frac{\left\langle\Psi^{j k}\right|(\hat{H}-H)|\Psi\rangle-\left\langle\Psi^{j} \mid \Psi\right\rangle(\nabla H)_{k}-(\nabla H)_{j}\left\langle\Psi^{k} \mid \Psi\right\rangle}{\langle\Psi \mid \Psi\rangle}  \tag{19}\\
(\nabla H \nabla)_{j k} & =\frac{\left\langle\Psi^{j}\right|(\hat{H}-H)\left|\Psi^{k}\right\rangle-\left\langle\Psi^{j} \mid \Psi\right\rangle(H \nabla)_{k}-(\nabla H)_{j}\left\langle\Psi \mid \Psi^{k}\right\rangle}{\langle\Psi \mid \Psi\rangle} \tag{20}
\end{align*}
$$

The variation around a point $\boldsymbol{p}_{0}=\left(p_{1}^{(0)}, p_{2}^{(0)}, \ldots\right)$ with $E=H\left(\boldsymbol{p}_{0}\right)=H_{0}$ can be written in terms of the above-defined tensors. Let $p_{j}=p_{j}^{(0)}+d_{j}$ then

$$
\begin{align*}
\delta E & =\sum_{j}\left[d_{j}^{*}(\nabla H)_{j}+(H \nabla)_{j} d_{j}^{*}\right] \\
& +\frac{1}{2} \sum_{j k}\left[d_{j}^{*} d_{k}^{*}(\nabla \nabla H)_{j k}+2 d_{j}^{*}(\nabla H \nabla)_{j k} d_{k}+(H \nabla \nabla)_{j k} d_{j} d_{k}\right]+\ldots \tag{21}
\end{align*}
$$

The generalized "forces" will be denoted by $\boldsymbol{a}$ and $\boldsymbol{a}^{*}$ and the blocks of the generalized Hessian matrix by

$$
Q_{j k}=(\nabla H \nabla)_{j k} \quad \text { and } \quad M_{j k}=(\nabla \nabla H)_{j k}
$$

The Taylor expansion of the energy around the point $\boldsymbol{p}_{0}$ is

$$
E=H_{0}+\binom{\boldsymbol{d}}{\boldsymbol{d}^{*}}^{\dagger}\binom{\boldsymbol{a}}{\boldsymbol{a}^{*}}+\frac{1}{2}\binom{\boldsymbol{d}}{\boldsymbol{d}^{*}}^{\dagger}\left(\begin{array}{ll}
\boldsymbol{M} & \boldsymbol{Q}  \tag{22}\\
\boldsymbol{Q}^{*} & \boldsymbol{M}^{*}
\end{array}\right)\binom{\boldsymbol{d}}{\boldsymbol{d}^{*}}
$$

In obvious notations:

$$
\begin{equation*}
E=H_{0}+\boldsymbol{D}^{\dagger} \boldsymbol{A}+\frac{1}{2} \boldsymbol{D}^{\dagger} \boldsymbol{B} \boldsymbol{D} \tag{23}
\end{equation*}
$$

This relationship can serve to minimize the wave function using the Newton-method

$$
\binom{\boldsymbol{a}}{\boldsymbol{a}^{*}}+\left(\begin{array}{cc}
\boldsymbol{M} & \boldsymbol{Q}  \tag{24}\\
\boldsymbol{Q}^{*} & \boldsymbol{M}^{*}
\end{array}\right)\binom{\boldsymbol{d}}{\boldsymbol{d}^{*}}=0
$$

## 4 Separation of electronic and nuclear motions

Total Hamiltonian

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathcal{H}(\boldsymbol{R}, \boldsymbol{r})=\underbrace{-\sum_{\alpha} \frac{\hbar^{2}}{2 M_{\alpha}} \Delta_{\alpha}}_{\mathfrak{T}_{N}} \underbrace{-\frac{\hbar^{2}}{2 m_{e}} \sum_{i} \Delta_{i}}_{\mathfrak{T}_{e}}+\underbrace{\sum_{i<j} \frac{1}{r_{i j}}-\sum_{i} \sum_{\alpha} \frac{Z_{\alpha}}{r_{i \alpha}}+\sum_{\alpha<\beta} \frac{Z_{\alpha} Z_{\beta}}{R_{\alpha \beta}}}_{\mathcal{V}} \tag{25}
\end{equation*}
$$

Let us introduce $M$ an "average nuclear mass", the dimensionless number $\mu_{\alpha}=M / M_{\alpha}$ characterizing the nuclear mass of atom $\alpha$, and the electron/nuclear mass ratio parameter

$$
\begin{equation*}
\kappa=\left(\frac{m}{M}\right)^{1 / 4} \tag{26}
\end{equation*}
$$

Total Hamiltonian in atomic units

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mathcal{H}(\boldsymbol{R}, \boldsymbol{r}) & =-\frac{1}{2} \sum_{i} \triangle_{i}+\mathcal{V}(\boldsymbol{r}, \boldsymbol{R})-\frac{\kappa^{4}}{2} \sum_{\alpha} \mu_{\alpha} \triangle_{\alpha} \\
& =\mathcal{H}_{e}(\boldsymbol{R} ; \boldsymbol{r})+\kappa^{4} \mathcal{T}_{N}(\boldsymbol{R})
\end{aligned}
$$

Consider $\kappa^{4} \mathcal{T}_{N}$ as perturbation. At zero order we obtain the electronic Schrödinger equation

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathcal{H}_{e}(\boldsymbol{r} ; \boldsymbol{R}) \Psi_{n}(\boldsymbol{r} ; \boldsymbol{R})=U_{n}(\boldsymbol{R}) \Psi_{n}(\boldsymbol{r} ; \boldsymbol{R}) \tag{27}
\end{equation*}
$$

with the electronic Hamiltonian

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathcal{H}_{e}=\mathcal{T}_{e}+\mathcal{V} \tag{28}
\end{equation*}
$$

The solutions of the electronic Schrödinger equation form a complete basis of the eigenfunctions $\Psi_{n}(\boldsymbol{r} ; \boldsymbol{R})$ on which the total wave function can be expanded

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Upsilon(\boldsymbol{r}, \boldsymbol{R})=\sum_{n} \Xi_{n}(\boldsymbol{R}) \Psi_{n}(\boldsymbol{r} ; \boldsymbol{R}) \tag{29}
\end{equation*}
$$

with the nuclear coordinate dependent expansion coefficients, $\Xi_{n}(\boldsymbol{R})$.
Substitute the expansion into the Schrödinger equation

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sum_{n}\left\{\mathcal{T}_{N}+\mathcal{H}_{e}\right\} \Xi_{n}(\boldsymbol{R}) \Psi_{n}(\boldsymbol{r} ; \boldsymbol{R})=\mathcal{E} \sum_{n} \Xi_{n}(\boldsymbol{R}) \Psi_{n}(\boldsymbol{r} ; \boldsymbol{R}) \tag{30}
\end{equation*}
$$

and use that $\Psi_{n}$ are eigenfunctions of $\mathcal{H}_{e}$

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sum_{n}\left\{\mathcal{T}_{N}+U_{n}(\boldsymbol{R})\right\} \Xi_{n}(\boldsymbol{R}) \Psi_{n}(\boldsymbol{r} ; \boldsymbol{R})=\mathcal{E} \sum_{n} \Xi_{n}(\boldsymbol{R}) \Psi_{n}(\boldsymbol{r} ; \boldsymbol{R}) \tag{31}
\end{equation*}
$$

The nuclear kinetic energy operator leads to electron-nuclear coupling terms related to the variation of the electronic wave function with respect to the nuclear coordinates

$$
\begin{align*}
& -\frac{1}{2} \sum_{\alpha} \mu_{\alpha} \triangle_{\alpha}\left[\Psi_{n}(\boldsymbol{r} ; \boldsymbol{R}) \Xi_{n}(\boldsymbol{R})\right]=  \tag{32}\\
& -\frac{1}{2} \sum_{\alpha} \mu_{\alpha}\left[\Psi_{n} \triangle_{\alpha} \Xi_{n}+2\left(\nabla_{\alpha} \Psi_{n} \nabla_{\alpha} \Xi_{n}\right)+\Xi_{n} \triangle_{\alpha} \Psi_{n}\right]
\end{align*}
$$

Multiply from left by $\Psi_{k}^{*}(\boldsymbol{r} ; \boldsymbol{R})$, integrate over the electronic variables and denote the off-diagonal coupling matrix elements by

$$
\begin{equation*}
B_{k n}=\left\langle\Psi_{k}\right| \mathcal{T}_{N}\left|\Psi_{n}\right\rangle-\sum_{\alpha} \mu_{\alpha}\left\langle\Psi_{k}\right| \nabla_{\alpha}\left|\Psi_{n}\right\rangle \nabla_{\alpha} \tag{33}
\end{equation*}
$$

The exact solution of the nuclear problem

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left\{\mathcal{T}_{N}+U_{k}(\boldsymbol{R})+\left\langle\Psi_{k}\right| \mathcal{T}_{N}\left|\Psi_{k}\right\rangle-\mathcal{E}\right\} \Xi_{k}(\boldsymbol{R})=\sum_{n \neq k} B_{k n} \Xi_{n}(\boldsymbol{R}) \tag{34}
\end{equation*}
$$

requires the complete set of electronic eigenfunctions $\Psi_{n}$.

### 4.1 Born-Oppenheimer approximation

Provided the energy gap of electronic states is large, the matrix elements of $\mathcal{T}$ and $\nabla_{\alpha}$ are small. In this case the nuclei move on a single potential energy surface, $U_{n}(\boldsymbol{R})$, and the total wave function can be written in a simple product form

$$
\Upsilon(\boldsymbol{R}, \boldsymbol{r})=\Xi(\boldsymbol{R}) \Psi(\boldsymbol{r} ; \boldsymbol{R})
$$

Born-Oppenheimer approximation $\Rightarrow$ all electron-nuclear coupling terms are neglected

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left\{\mathcal{T}_{N}+E_{k}(\boldsymbol{R})\right\} \Xi_{k}(\boldsymbol{R})=\mathcal{E} \Xi_{k}(\boldsymbol{R}) \tag{35}
\end{equation*}
$$

Adiabatic approximation $\Rightarrow$ diagonal coupling term is retained

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left\{\mathcal{T}_{N}+E_{k}(\boldsymbol{R})+\left\langle\Psi_{k}\right| \mathcal{T}_{N}\left|\Psi_{k}\right\rangle\right\} \Xi_{k}(\boldsymbol{R})=\mathcal{E} \Xi_{k}(\boldsymbol{R}) \tag{36}
\end{equation*}
$$

### 4.2 Breakdown of the Born-Oppenheimer approximation

The $\left\langle\Psi_{i}\right| \nabla_{\alpha}\left|\Psi_{j}\right\rangle$ coupling terms can be neglected only if the electronic states are well-separated.
Differentiate the electronic Schrödinger equation, multiply from left by $\Psi_{i}, i \neq j$ and integrate

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left\langle\Psi_{i}\right| \frac{\partial H_{e}}{\partial R_{\alpha}}\left|\Psi_{j}\right\rangle+\left\langle\Psi_{i}\right| H_{e}\left|\frac{\partial \Psi_{j}}{\partial R_{\alpha}}\right\rangle=\frac{\partial U_{i}}{\partial R_{\alpha}}\left\langle\Psi_{i} \mid \Psi_{j}\right\rangle+U_{j}\left\langle\Psi_{i} \left\lvert\, \frac{\partial \Psi_{j}}{\partial R_{\alpha}}\right.\right\rangle \tag{37}
\end{equation*}
$$

after rearranging

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left\langle\Psi_{i}\right| \frac{\partial H_{e}}{\partial R_{\alpha}}\left|\Psi_{j}\right\rangle+U_{i}\left\langle\Psi_{i}\right| \nabla_{\alpha}\left|\Psi_{j}\right\rangle=\frac{\partial U_{i}}{\partial R_{\alpha}} \delta_{i j}+U_{j}\left\langle\Psi_{i}\right| \nabla_{\alpha}\left|\Psi_{j}\right\rangle \tag{38}
\end{equation*}
$$

leading to the condition

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left\langle\Psi_{i}\right| \nabla_{\alpha}\left|\Psi_{j}\right\rangle=\left\langle\Psi_{i}\right| \frac{\partial H_{e}}{\partial R_{\alpha}}\left|\Psi_{j}\right\rangle /\left(U_{j}-U_{i}\right) \tag{39}
\end{equation*}
$$

which indicates that a smaller energy gap leads to an enhanced coupling term (e.g. avoided crossings).

## 5 Electron Hamiltonian and wave function

Electronic Schrödinger equation

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left\{\mathcal{T}_{e}+\mathcal{V}_{e N}+\mathcal{V}_{e e}+\mathcal{V}_{N N}\right\} \Psi=E \Psi \tag{40}
\end{equation*}
$$

or

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left\{\sum_{i} \hat{h}(i)+\sum_{i, j}^{\prime} \hat{g}(i, j)+\mathcal{V}_{N N}\right\} \Psi=E \Psi \tag{41}
\end{equation*}
$$

The many-electron wave function $\Psi\left(\mathbf{x}_{\mathbf{1}}, \mathbf{x}_{\mathbf{2}}, \ldots, \mathbf{x}_{\mathbf{N}}\right)$

1. describes a definite spin state

$$
\begin{equation*}
\hat{H} \hat{S}^{2}-\hat{S}^{2} \hat{H}=0 \quad \text { therefore } \quad \hat{S}^{2} \Psi=S(S+1) \Psi \tag{42}
\end{equation*}
$$

2. is normalized

$$
\begin{equation*}
\int \Psi^{*} \Psi d \boldsymbol{x}=\int|\Psi|^{2} d \boldsymbol{x}=1 \tag{43}
\end{equation*}
$$

3. satisfies the antisymmetry requirement

$$
\begin{equation*}
\hat{P} \Psi=\varepsilon_{P} \Psi \tag{44}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\varepsilon_{P}= \pm 1$ for a permutation of the arguments $\boldsymbol{x}_{1}, \boldsymbol{x}_{2}, \ldots, \boldsymbol{x}_{N}$ comprising an even/odd number of interchanges.

In the following we discuss briefly some implications of these properties on the construction of the many-electron wave function.

### 5.1 Electron spin

Although the molecular Hamiltonian is usually spin-independent, we know from experiment (Zeeman effect) that electrons have an intrinsic magnetic moment. Therefore we introduce spin angular momentum operators $\hat{s}_{\alpha}$ acting on the spin variable, $\sigma$

$$
\hat{s}_{z} \eta(\sigma)=\lambda \eta(\sigma)
$$

with two permitted solutions:

$$
\begin{align*}
& \hat{s}_{z} \alpha(\sigma)=\frac{1}{2} \alpha(\sigma)  \tag{45}\\
& \hat{s}_{z} \beta(\sigma)=-\frac{1}{2} \beta(\sigma)
\end{align*}
$$

### 5.2 Spin operators and spin functions

Spin variable $\sigma$ with possible values

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sigma= \pm 1 \tag{46}
\end{equation*}
$$

Two spin functions

$$
\begin{array}{ll}
\alpha\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)=1 & \alpha\left(-\frac{1}{2}\right)=0 \\
\beta\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)=0 & \beta\left(-\frac{1}{2}\right)=1 \tag{47}
\end{array}
$$

orthonormalized

$$
\begin{align*}
& \int \alpha(\sigma) \alpha(\sigma) d \sigma=\sum_{\sigma} \alpha^{2}(\sigma)=\alpha^{2}\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)+\alpha^{2}\left(-\frac{1}{2}\right)=0^{2}+1^{2}=1 \\
& \int \beta(\sigma) \beta(\sigma) d \sigma=\sum_{\sigma} \beta^{2}(\sigma)=1^{2}+0^{2}=1  \tag{48}\\
& \int \alpha(\sigma) \beta(\sigma) d \sigma=\sum_{\sigma} \alpha(\sigma) \beta(\sigma)=0 \times 1+1 \times 0=0
\end{align*}
$$

eigenfunctions of $\hat{s}_{z}$ and $\hat{s}^{2}$ operators $(\hbar=1)$

$$
\begin{array}{ll}
\hat{s}^{2} \alpha(\sigma)=\frac{3}{4} \alpha(\sigma) & \hat{s}_{z} \alpha(\sigma)=\frac{1}{2} \alpha(\sigma)  \tag{49}\\
\hat{s}^{2} \beta(\sigma)=\frac{3}{4} \beta(\sigma) & \hat{s}_{z} \beta(\sigma)=-\frac{1}{2} \beta(\sigma)
\end{array}
$$

behave as follows with the $\hat{s}_{ \pm}$operators

$$
\begin{array}{ll}
\hat{s}_{+} \alpha(\sigma)=0 & \hat{s}_{-} \alpha(\sigma)=\beta(\sigma) \\
\hat{s}_{+} \beta(\sigma)=\alpha(\sigma) & \hat{s}_{-} \beta(\sigma)=0 \tag{50}
\end{array}
$$

### 5.3 Total spin operators

Cartesian components of the total spin of an N-particle system

$$
\hat{S}=\sum_{i} \hat{s}^{(i)}=\sum_{i}\left(\begin{array}{c}
\hat{s}_{x}^{(i)}  \tag{51}\\
\hat{s}_{y}^{(i)} \\
\hat{s}_{z}^{(i)}
\end{array}\right)=\left(\begin{array}{c}
\hat{S}_{x} \\
\hat{S}_{y} \\
\hat{S}_{z}
\end{array}\right)
$$

Satisfy the commutation rules

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left[\hat{S}_{\alpha}, \hat{S}_{\beta}\right]=i \hat{S}_{\gamma} \quad(\alpha \beta \gamma=x y z, y z x, z x y) \tag{52}
\end{equation*}
$$

Step-up and step-down operators

$$
\begin{equation*}
\hat{S}_{+}=\hat{S}_{x}+i \hat{S}_{y} \quad \hat{S}_{-}=\hat{S}_{x}-i \hat{S}_{y} \tag{53}
\end{equation*}
$$

in terms of which the $\hat{S}^{2}=\hat{S}_{x}^{2}+\hat{S}_{y}^{2}+\hat{S}_{z}^{2}$ operator is

$$
\begin{equation*}
\hat{S}^{2}=\hat{S}_{-} \hat{S}_{+}+\hat{S}_{z}+\hat{S}_{z}^{2}=\hat{S}_{+} \hat{S}_{-}-\hat{S}_{z}+\hat{S}_{z}^{2} \tag{54}
\end{equation*}
$$

The simultaneous eigenfunctions $\Theta\left(S, M_{S}\right)$ of $\hat{S}^{2}$ and $\hat{S}_{z}$ satisfy

$$
\begin{equation*}
\hat{S}^{2} \Theta\left(S, M_{S}\right)=S(S+1) \Theta\left(S, M_{S}\right) \quad \hat{S}_{z} \Theta\left(S, M_{S}\right)=M_{S} \Theta\left(S, M_{S}\right) \tag{55}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\S$ is a positive half-integer and $M_{S}=S, S-1, \ldots,-S$.
Step-down and step-up operators act as

$$
\begin{equation*}
\hat{S}_{ \pm} \Theta\left(S, M_{S}\right)=\sqrt{S(S+1)-M_{S}\left(M_{S} \pm 1\right)} \Theta\left(S, M_{S} \pm 1\right) \tag{56}
\end{equation*}
$$

### 5.4 Spin functions of a two-electron system

Form four possible spin-functions

$$
\begin{equation*}
\alpha\left(\sigma_{1}\right) \alpha\left(\sigma_{2}\right) ; \quad \alpha\left(\sigma_{1}\right) \beta\left(\sigma_{2}\right) ; \quad \beta\left(\sigma_{1}\right) \alpha\left(\sigma_{2}\right) ; \quad \beta\left(\sigma_{1}\right) \beta\left(\sigma_{2}\right) \tag{57}
\end{equation*}
$$

One antisymmetric function

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Theta(0,0)=\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\left(\alpha\left(\sigma_{1}\right) \beta\left(\sigma_{2}\right)-\beta\left(\sigma_{1}\right) \alpha\left(\sigma_{2}\right)\right) \tag{58}
\end{equation*}
$$

Three symmetric functions

$$
\begin{align*}
\Theta(1,1) & =\alpha\left(\sigma_{1}\right) \alpha\left(\sigma_{2}\right) \\
\Theta(1,0) & =\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\left(\alpha\left(\sigma_{1}\right) \beta\left(\sigma_{2}\right)+\beta\left(\sigma_{1}\right) \alpha\left(\sigma_{2}\right)\right)  \tag{59}\\
\Theta(1,-1) & =\beta\left(\sigma_{1}\right) \beta\left(\sigma_{2}\right)
\end{align*}
$$

For instance

$$
\begin{equation*}
\hat{S}_{z} \alpha\left(\sigma_{1}\right) \alpha\left(\sigma_{2}\right)=\left(s_{z}^{(1)}+s_{z}^{(2)}\right) \alpha\left(\sigma_{1}\right) \alpha\left(\sigma_{2}\right)=\left(\frac{1}{2}+\frac{1}{2}\right) \alpha\left(\sigma_{1}\right) \alpha\left(\sigma_{2}\right) \tag{60}
\end{equation*}
$$

In the case of two electrons, an antisymmetric total wave function can always be constructed as antisymmetric/symmetric combination of the space- and spin functions.

### 5.5 Space and spin orbitals

spatial orbitals $\phi_{i}(\boldsymbol{r})$

- wave functions of a single particle

$$
\hat{h}(\boldsymbol{r}) \phi_{i}(\boldsymbol{r})=\epsilon_{i} \phi_{i}(\boldsymbol{r})
$$

- describe the spatial distribution of an electron $\varrho_{i}(\boldsymbol{r})=\left|\phi_{i}(\boldsymbol{r})\right|^{2}$
- form an orthonormal set

$$
\int d \boldsymbol{r} \phi_{i}^{*}(\boldsymbol{r}) \phi_{j}(\boldsymbol{r})=\left\langle\phi_{i} \mid \phi_{j}\right\rangle=\delta_{i j}
$$

spin orbitals $\psi_{i}(\boldsymbol{x})$

- simultaneous eigenfunctions of $\hat{h}(\boldsymbol{r})$ and $\hat{s}_{z}$
- products of spatial and spin functions

$$
\psi_{i}(\boldsymbol{x})=\phi_{i}(\boldsymbol{r}) \eta_{i}(\sigma)
$$

- orthonormality

$$
\int d \boldsymbol{x} \psi_{i}^{*}(\boldsymbol{x}) \psi_{j}(\boldsymbol{x})=\int d \boldsymbol{r} \phi_{i}^{*}(\boldsymbol{r}) \phi_{j}(\boldsymbol{r}) \int d \sigma \alpha(\sigma)^{*} \beta(\sigma)=\delta_{i j} \delta_{\alpha \beta}
$$

## 6 Density matrices

We do not necessarily need N -electron all information contained in the $4 N$-variable wave function to obtain the energy and properties of the system. We introduce a hierarchy of functions that depend explicitly on one, two, three, etc. particle coordinates.
The probability of finding electron 1 in $d \boldsymbol{x}_{1}=d \boldsymbol{r}_{1} d \sigma_{1}$, while other electrons are anywhere, is

$$
\begin{equation*}
d \boldsymbol{x}_{1} \int \Psi^{*}\left(\boldsymbol{x}_{1}, \boldsymbol{x}_{2}, \ldots, \boldsymbol{x}_{N}\right) \Psi\left(\boldsymbol{x}_{1}, \boldsymbol{x}_{2}, \ldots, \boldsymbol{x}_{N}\right) d \boldsymbol{x}_{2} \ldots d \boldsymbol{x}_{N} \tag{61}
\end{equation*}
$$

and the probability of finding any of the $N$ electrons in $d \boldsymbol{x}_{1}$ is $N$ times this, which can be written as $P\left(\boldsymbol{x}_{1}\right) d \boldsymbol{x}_{1}$, where

$$
\begin{equation*}
P\left(\boldsymbol{x}_{1}\right)=N \int \Psi^{*}\left(\boldsymbol{x}_{1}, \boldsymbol{x}_{2}, \ldots, \boldsymbol{x}_{N}\right) \Psi\left(\boldsymbol{x}_{1}, \boldsymbol{x}_{2}, \ldots, \boldsymbol{x}_{N}\right) d \boldsymbol{x}_{2} \ldots d \boldsymbol{x}_{N} \tag{62}
\end{equation*}
$$

The probability of finding an electron in $\boldsymbol{r}_{1}$, without making reference to the spin coordinate is

$$
\begin{equation*}
\rho\left(\boldsymbol{r}_{1}\right)=\int P\left(\boldsymbol{x}_{1}\right) d \sigma_{1} \tag{63}
\end{equation*}
$$

This is the electron density function measured by X-ray crystallography. The probability of finding any two electrons simultaneously in $\boldsymbol{x}_{1}$ and $\boldsymbol{x}_{2}$ is

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Gamma\left(\boldsymbol{x}_{1}, \boldsymbol{x}_{2}\right)=N(N-1) \int \Psi^{*}\left(\boldsymbol{x}_{1}, \boldsymbol{x}_{2}, \ldots, \boldsymbol{x}_{N}\right) \Psi\left(\boldsymbol{x}_{1}, \boldsymbol{x}_{2}, \ldots, \boldsymbol{x}_{N}\right) d \boldsymbol{x}_{3} \ldots d \boldsymbol{x}_{N} \tag{64}
\end{equation*}
$$

and in the spinless version

$$
\begin{equation*}
\gamma\left(\boldsymbol{r}_{1}, \boldsymbol{r}_{2}\right)=\iint \Gamma\left(\boldsymbol{x}_{1}\right) d \sigma_{1} d \sigma_{2} \tag{65}
\end{equation*}
$$

### 6.1 Reduced density matrices

For the purposes of evaluating one- and tow-electron operator expectation values, we need to generalize the density functions as follows

$$
\begin{equation*}
P\left(\boldsymbol{x}_{1} ; \boldsymbol{x}_{1}^{\prime}\right)=N \int \Psi^{*}\left(\boldsymbol{x}_{1}, \boldsymbol{x}_{2}, \ldots, \boldsymbol{x}_{N}\right) \Psi\left(\boldsymbol{x}_{1}^{\prime}, \boldsymbol{x}_{2}, \ldots, \boldsymbol{x}_{N}\right) d \boldsymbol{x}_{2} \ldots d \boldsymbol{x}_{N} \tag{66}
\end{equation*}
$$

and

$$
\begin{align*}
& \Gamma\left(\boldsymbol{x}_{1}, \boldsymbol{x}_{2} ; \boldsymbol{x}_{1}^{\prime}, \boldsymbol{x}_{2}^{\prime}\right)= \\
&  \tag{67}\\
& \quad N(N-1) \int \Psi^{*}\left(\boldsymbol{x}_{1}^{\prime}, \boldsymbol{x}_{2}^{\prime}, \ldots, \boldsymbol{x}_{N}\right) \Psi\left(\boldsymbol{x}_{1}^{\prime}, \boldsymbol{x}_{2}^{\prime}, \ldots, \boldsymbol{x}_{N}\right) d \boldsymbol{x}_{3} \ldots d \boldsymbol{x}_{N}
\end{align*}
$$

The expectation value of a one-electron operator $\hat{H}_{1}=\sum_{i} \hat{h}(i)$ is

$$
\begin{align*}
\langle\Psi| \hat{H}_{1}|\Psi\rangle=\sum_{i=1}^{N} \int \cdots \int d \boldsymbol{x}_{1} d \boldsymbol{x}_{i-1} d \boldsymbol{x}_{i+1} & \ldots d \boldsymbol{x}_{N} \\
& \times \int d \boldsymbol{x}_{i} \Psi^{*}\left(\boldsymbol{x}_{1}, \boldsymbol{x}_{2}, \ldots, \boldsymbol{x}_{N}\right) \hat{h}(i) \Psi\left(\boldsymbol{x}_{1}^{\prime}, \boldsymbol{x}_{2}, \ldots, \boldsymbol{x}_{N}\right) \tag{68}
\end{align*}
$$

which can be written with the 1RDM as

$$
\begin{equation*}
\langle\Psi| \hat{H}_{1}|\Psi\rangle=\int_{\boldsymbol{x}_{1}^{\prime}=\boldsymbol{x}_{1}} \hat{h}(1) P\left(\boldsymbol{x}_{1} ; \boldsymbol{x}_{1}^{\prime}\right) d \boldsymbol{x}_{1} \tag{69}
\end{equation*}
$$

where we put $\boldsymbol{x}_{1}^{\prime}=\boldsymbol{x}_{1}$ after the action of the operator on $P\left(\boldsymbol{x}_{1} ; \boldsymbol{x}_{1}^{\prime}\right)$, before performing the integral.
Similarly, for a two-electron operator

$$
\begin{equation*}
\langle\Psi| \hat{H}_{2}|\Psi\rangle=\iint_{\substack{\boldsymbol{x}_{1}^{\prime}=\boldsymbol{x}_{1} \\ \boldsymbol{x}_{2}^{\prime}=\boldsymbol{x}_{2}}} \hat{g}(1,2) \Gamma\left(\boldsymbol{x}_{1} ; \boldsymbol{x}_{1}^{\prime}\right) d \boldsymbol{x}_{1} d \boldsymbol{x}_{2} \tag{70}
\end{equation*}
$$

Higher than 2RDMs are not needed to describe the interaction in a molecular system.

## 7 Construction of the wave function

Consider a simplified problem, by neglecting the electron-electron interaction, leading to a sum of one-electron Hamiltonians

$$
\begin{equation*}
\hat{H}=\sum_{i}^{N} \hat{h}(i) \tag{71}
\end{equation*}
$$

which has as eigenfunctions

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Psi^{\mathrm{HP}}=\psi_{i}\left(\boldsymbol{x}_{\mathbf{1}}\right) \psi_{j}\left(\boldsymbol{x}_{\mathbf{2}}\right) \ldots \psi_{n}\left(\boldsymbol{x}_{N}\right) \tag{72}
\end{equation*}
$$

i.e. the product of one-electron functions, satisfying the following eigenequations

$$
\begin{equation*}
\hat{h}(i) \psi_{j}\left(\boldsymbol{x}_{\boldsymbol{i}}\right)=\varepsilon_{j} \psi_{j}\left(\boldsymbol{x}_{\boldsymbol{i}}\right) \tag{73}
\end{equation*}
$$

where the electron $i$ occupies the spin orbital $\psi_{j}\left(\boldsymbol{x}_{\boldsymbol{i}}\right)$ with energy $\varepsilon_{j}$. The energy of this Hartree product is

$$
\begin{equation*}
\langle\Psi| \hat{H}|\Psi\rangle=\varepsilon_{i}+\varepsilon_{j}+\varepsilon_{k}+\ldots+\varepsilon_{n}=E^{\mathrm{HP}} \tag{74}
\end{equation*}
$$

This wave function is obviously not a physically appropriate one (violates the Pauli principle) and the complete neglect of electron repulsion is a very crude approximation. Nevertheless, we can examine whether the idea of writing the N-electron wave function as a linear combination of product formed by one-electron functions, can lead to the exact solution.

### 7.1 Expansion theorem

Assume we have a complete set of functions $\left\{\chi_{i}\left(x_{1}\right)\right\}$ of a single variable $x_{1}$. Then any arbitrary function of that variable can be expanded exactly as

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Phi\left(x_{1}\right)=\sum_{i} a_{i} \chi\left(x_{1}\right) \tag{75}
\end{equation*}
$$

We can expand also a two-variable function of $x_{1}$ and $x_{2}$ on the same domain by holding $x_{2}$ fixed

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Phi\left(x_{1}, x_{2}\right)=\sum_{i} a_{i}\left(x_{2}\right) \chi\left(x_{1}\right) \tag{76}
\end{equation*}
$$

The ensemble of expansion coefficients $a_{i}\left(x_{2}\right)$ for each fixed $x_{2}$ coordinates, can be considered now as a new function of a single variable, that can be expanded as

$$
\begin{equation*}
a_{i}\left(x_{2}\right)=\sum_{j} b_{i j} \chi_{j}\left(x_{2}\right) \tag{77}
\end{equation*}
$$

and substituting this expansion into that of $\Phi\left(x_{1}, x_{2}\right)$, we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Phi\left(x_{1}, x_{2}\right)=\sum_{i j} b_{i j} \chi_{i}\left(x_{1}\right) \chi_{j}\left(x_{2}\right) \tag{78}
\end{equation*}
$$

This process can be extended to functions $\Phi\left(x_{1}, x_{2}, \ldots, x_{N}\right)$ of any number of variables.
Let us collect the space and spin coordinates of an electron to $\boldsymbol{x}$. The one-electron functions, the spin orbitals, $\chi(\boldsymbol{x})$ enter into the general expansion

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Phi\left(\boldsymbol{x}_{1}, \boldsymbol{x}_{2}, \boldsymbol{x}_{3}, \ldots, \boldsymbol{x}_{N}\right)=\sum_{i j k \ldots N} b_{i j k \ldots N} \chi_{i}\left(\boldsymbol{x}_{1}\right) \chi_{j}\left(\boldsymbol{x}_{2}\right) \chi_{k}\left(\boldsymbol{x}_{3}\right) \ldots \chi_{N}\left(\boldsymbol{x}_{N}\right) \tag{79}
\end{equation*}
$$

However, the wave function should be antisymmetric with respect to the exchange of coordinates of two electrons. For two electrons

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Phi\left(\boldsymbol{x}_{1}, \boldsymbol{x}_{2}\right)=-\Phi\left(\boldsymbol{x}_{2}, \boldsymbol{x}_{1}\right) \tag{80}
\end{equation*}
$$

which implies for the expansion coefficients that $b_{i j}=-b_{j i}$ and $b_{i i}=0$, or

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Phi\left(\boldsymbol{x}_{1}, \boldsymbol{x}_{2}\right)=\sum_{i>j} b_{i j}\left\{\chi_{i}\left(\boldsymbol{x}_{1}\right) \chi_{j}\left(\boldsymbol{x}_{2}\right)-\chi_{j}\left(\boldsymbol{x}_{1}\right) \chi_{i}\left(\boldsymbol{x}_{2}\right)\right\}=\sum_{i>j} \sqrt{2} b_{i j} \operatorname{det}\left[\chi_{i}\left(\boldsymbol{x}_{1}\right) \chi_{j}\left(\boldsymbol{x}_{2}\right)\right] \tag{81}
\end{equation*}
$$

More generally, an arbitrary $N$-electron function can be expanded as linear combination of all possible $N$-electron determinants, formed from a complete set of one-electron spin orbitals, $\left\{\chi_{i}(\boldsymbol{x})\right\}$. Note that any complete set of one-electron spin orbitals can be used, in principle. Other possibilities ...

### 7.2 Configuration Interaction

Let us denote the $N$-electron determinants as $\Phi_{I}$, which will be supposed to be real and orthonormal. The exact wave function, $\Psi$ expanded on the fixed basis of these determinants

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Psi=\sum_{I} c_{I} \Phi_{I} \tag{82}
\end{equation*}
$$

can be obtained by minimizing the expectation value of the Hamiltonian

$$
\begin{equation*}
\langle\Psi| \hat{H}|\Psi\rangle=\sum_{I J} c_{I} c_{J}\left\langle\Phi_{I}\right| \hat{H}\left|\Phi_{J}\right\rangle=\sum_{I J} c_{I} c_{J} H_{I J} \tag{83}
\end{equation*}
$$

We suppose that $\Psi$ is normalized, i.e.

$$
\begin{equation*}
\langle\Psi \mid \Psi\rangle=\sum_{I J} c_{I} c_{J}\left\langle\Phi_{I} \mid \Phi_{J}\right\rangle=\sum_{I} c_{I}^{2}=1 \tag{84}
\end{equation*}
$$

Since we would like to preserve the normalization of the wave function, the constrained minimization method with Langrange multipliers is used, i.e. we minimize the function

$$
\begin{align*}
\mathcal{L}\left(c_{1}, c_{2}, \ldots, c_{K}, E\right) & =\langle\Psi| \hat{H}|\Psi\rangle-E(\langle\Psi \mid \Psi\rangle-1) \\
& =\sum_{I J} c_{I} c_{J} H_{I J}-E\left(\sum_{I} c_{I}^{2}-1\right) \tag{85}
\end{align*}
$$

The minimum of this function can be found from the condition

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial c_{I}}=2 \sum_{J} c_{J} H_{I J}-2 E c_{I}=0 \tag{86}
\end{equation*}
$$

which is just the standard eigenvalue problem of the Hamiltonian matrix

$$
\begin{equation*}
\boldsymbol{H} \boldsymbol{c}=E \boldsymbol{c} \tag{87}
\end{equation*}
$$

Consider all the possible eigenvalues $E_{\alpha}$ of the Hamiltonian matrix

$$
\begin{equation*}
\boldsymbol{H} \boldsymbol{c}^{\alpha}=E_{\alpha} \boldsymbol{c}^{\alpha} \tag{88}
\end{equation*}
$$

Let us introduce the $\boldsymbol{C}$ and the diagonal matrix of the eigenvalues, $\boldsymbol{E}$, then we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
H C=C E \tag{89}
\end{equation*}
$$

The $\alpha$-th eigenvalue is the expectation value of the Hamiltonian with respect to $\Phi_{\alpha}$

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left\langle\Phi_{\beta}\right| \hat{H}\left|\Phi_{\alpha}\right\rangle=\sum_{I J} c_{I}^{\beta}\left\langle\Psi_{I}\right| \hat{H}\left|\Psi_{J}\right\rangle c_{J}^{\alpha}=\sum_{I J}\left(\boldsymbol{c}^{\beta}\right)^{\dagger} \boldsymbol{H} \boldsymbol{c}^{\alpha}=E_{\alpha}\left(\boldsymbol{c}^{\beta}\right)^{\dagger} \boldsymbol{c}^{\alpha}=E_{\alpha} \delta_{\alpha \beta} \tag{90}
\end{equation*}
$$

The lowest eigenvalue is upper bound to the ground state energy. Higher eigenvalues are upper bounds to the energies of the excited states.

## 8 Method of determinants

We have seen that the exact $N$-electron wave function, satisfying the Pauli principle, can be expanded in terms of antisymmetrized products of one-electron functions.
Such wave functions correspond to well-known mathematical objects, the determinants, which we shall study in more details.

### 8.1 Permutation (symmetric) group

Consider N ordered indices

$$
\{1,2,3, \ldots, N\}
$$

Define a permutation as

$$
P\{1,2,3, \ldots, N\}=\left\{p_{1}, p_{2}, p_{3}, \ldots, p_{N}\right\}
$$

which means that 1 is replaced by $p_{1}$, etc.

Notation

$$
P=\left(\begin{array}{cccc}
1 & 2 & \ldots & N \\
p_{1} & p_{2} & \ldots & p_{N}
\end{array}\right)
$$

Product of two permutations is also permutation

$$
\begin{align*}
P Q & =\left(\begin{array}{cccc}
1 & 2 & \ldots & N \\
p_{1} & p_{2} & \ldots & p_{N}
\end{array}\right)\left(\begin{array}{cccc}
1 & 2 & \ldots & N \\
q_{1} & q_{2} & \ldots & q_{N}
\end{array}\right)= \\
& =\left(\begin{array}{cccc}
q_{1} & q_{2} & \ldots & q_{N} \\
r_{1} & r_{2} & \ldots & r_{N}
\end{array}\right) \quad\left(\begin{array}{cccc}
1 & 2 & \ldots & N \\
q_{1} & q_{2} & \ldots & q_{N}
\end{array}\right)=  \tag{91}\\
& =\left(\begin{array}{cccc}
1 & 2 & \ldots & N \\
r_{1} & r_{2} & \ldots & r_{N}
\end{array}\right)=R
\end{align*}
$$

Inverse permutation:

$$
\text { if } \quad P=\left(\begin{array}{cccc}
1 & 2 & \ldots & N  \tag{92}\\
p_{1} & p_{2} & \ldots & p_{N}
\end{array}\right) \quad \text { then } \quad P^{-1}=\left(\begin{array}{cccc}
p_{1} & p_{2} & \ldots & p_{N} \\
1 & 2 & \ldots & N
\end{array}\right)
$$

Unity:

$$
I=\left(\begin{array}{llll}
1 & 2 & \ldots & N  \tag{93}\\
1 & 2 & \ldots & N
\end{array}\right)
$$

Associativity:

$$
\begin{equation*}
(P Q) R=R(R Q) \tag{94}
\end{equation*}
$$

The ensemble of the possible permutations of $N$ objects forms $S_{N}$, a symmetric group of rank $N$ and of order $N$ !.

### 8.2 Antisymmetrizer

Projection operator, selects the antisymmetric component of a many-electron function.

$$
\begin{equation*}
\hat{\mathcal{A}}=\frac{1}{\sqrt{N!}} \sum_{P \in S_{N}} \epsilon_{P} P \tag{95}
\end{equation*}
$$

with

$$
\epsilon_{P}=(-1)^{P}
$$

Idempotent: $\hat{\mathcal{A}} \hat{\mathcal{A}}=$ const $\times \hat{\mathcal{A}}$

$$
\begin{equation*}
\hat{\mathcal{A}} \hat{\mathcal{A}}=\left(\frac{1}{\sqrt{N!}}\right)^{2} \sum_{P \in S_{N}} \epsilon_{P} P \sum_{Q \in S_{N}} \epsilon_{Q} Q=\frac{1}{N!} \sum_{P \in S_{N}} \sum_{Q \in S_{N}}(-1)^{p+q} P Q \tag{96}
\end{equation*}
$$

for a given $P$, if $Q$ runs over $S_{N}$, the product $R=P Q$ runs over all the $N$ ! elements of $S_{N}$ :

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{1}{N!} \sum_{P \in S_{N}} \underbrace{\left[\sum_{R \in S_{N}}(-1)^{r} R\right]}_{\sqrt{N!} \hat{\mathcal{A}}}=\sqrt{N!} \hat{\mathcal{A}} \tag{97}
\end{equation*}
$$

Hermitian: $\hat{\mathcal{A}}^{\dagger}=\hat{\mathcal{A}}$, i.e. $\langle\hat{\mathcal{A}} \Psi \mid \Psi\rangle=\langle\Psi \mid \hat{\mathcal{A}} \Psi\rangle$

$$
\begin{align*}
& \langle\hat{\mathcal{A}} \Psi(1,2, \ldots N) \mid \Psi(1,2, \ldots N)\rangle= \\
& \sum_{P \in S_{N}} \epsilon_{P}\left\langle P^{-1} P \Psi(1,2, \ldots N) \mid P^{-1} \Psi(1,2, \ldots N)\right\rangle \tag{98}
\end{align*}
$$

Insertion of $P^{-1}$ changes only the order of variables of integration. If $P$ runs over all permutations, then so does $P^{-1}=Q$ too:

$$
\begin{align*}
& \sum_{P \in S_{N}} \epsilon_{P}\left\langle\Psi(1,2, \ldots N) \mid P^{-1} \Psi(1,2, \ldots N)\right\rangle= \\
& \sum_{Q \in S_{N}} \epsilon_{Q}\langle\Psi(1,2, \ldots N) \mid Q \Psi(1,2, \ldots N)\rangle=  \tag{99}\\
& \langle\Psi(1,2, \ldots N) \mid \hat{\mathcal{A}} \Psi(1,2, \ldots N)\rangle
\end{align*}
$$

### 8.3 Why antisymmetrizer?

Consider a $Q \in S_{N}$ then

$$
\begin{equation*}
Q \hat{\mathcal{A}}=\frac{1}{\sqrt{N!}} \sum_{P \in S_{N}}(-1)^{q}(-1)^{q}(-1)^{p} Q P=(-1)^{q} \frac{1}{\sqrt{N!}} \sum_{R \in S_{N}}(-1)^{r} R=(-1)^{q} \hat{\mathcal{A}} \tag{100}
\end{equation*}
$$

Apply $Q$, a permutation of the $N$ variables in $\Phi(1,2, \ldots, N)$ to

$$
\Psi(1,2, \ldots, N)=\hat{\mathcal{A}} \Phi(1,2, \ldots, N)
$$

, where $\Phi(1,2, \ldots, N)$ is an arbitrary function.

$$
\begin{align*}
Q \Psi(1,2, \ldots, N) & =Q \hat{\mathcal{A}} \Phi(1,2, \ldots, N) \\
& =(-1)^{q} \hat{\mathcal{A}} \Phi(1,2, \ldots, N)  \tag{101}\\
& =(-1)^{q} \Psi(1,2, \ldots, N)
\end{align*}
$$

After the action of $\hat{\mathcal{A}}$, the function $\Phi(1,2, \ldots, N)$ becomes antisymmetric.

## 9 Determinant wave function

The wave function obtained after the action of the antisymmetrizer on a Hartree-product can be written as a determinant:

$$
\begin{align*}
D_{K} & =\hat{\mathcal{A}}\left[\phi_{k_{1}}(1) \phi_{k_{2}}(2) \ldots \phi_{k_{N}}(N)\right] \\
& =\frac{1}{\sqrt{N!}} \operatorname{det}\left[\phi_{k_{1}}(1) \phi_{k_{2}}(2) \ldots \phi_{k_{N}}(N)\right]  \tag{102}\\
D_{K} & =\frac{1}{\sqrt{N!}}\left|\begin{array}{llll}
\phi_{k_{1}}(1) & \phi_{k_{2}}(1) & \ldots & \phi_{k_{N}}(1) \\
\phi_{k_{1}}(2) & \phi_{k_{2}}(2) & \ldots & \phi_{k_{N}}(2) \\
\vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots \\
\phi_{k_{1}}(N) & \phi_{k_{2}}(N) & \ldots & \phi_{k_{N}}(N)
\end{array}\right| \tag{103}
\end{align*}
$$

### 9.1 Invariance properties of the determinant wave function

Mixing of the orbitals constituting the determinant leaves it invariant (up to a constant factor).
Let us consider the wave function

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Phi=\hat{\mathcal{A}}\left[\phi_{1}(2) \phi_{2}(2) \ldots \phi_{N}(N)\right]=\frac{1}{\sqrt{N!}} \operatorname{det}\{\boldsymbol{A}\} \tag{104}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $A_{i j}=\phi_{j}(i)$. Apply a linear transformation on the set of orbitals $\left\{\phi_{k}\right\}$

$$
\begin{equation*}
\psi_{j}=\sum_{k} T_{k j} \phi_{k} \tag{105}
\end{equation*}
$$

The determinant wave function built from the new set of orbitals is

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Psi=\hat{\mathcal{A}}\left[\psi_{1}(2) \psi_{2}(2) \ldots \psi_{N}(N)\right]=\frac{1}{\sqrt{N!}} \operatorname{det}\{\boldsymbol{B}\} \tag{106}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $B_{i j}=\psi_{j}(i)$.
Using the transformation equation

$$
\begin{equation*}
\psi_{j}(i)=B_{i j}=\sum_{k} T_{k j} \phi_{k}(i)=\sum_{k} A_{i k} T_{k j}=(\mathbf{A T})_{i j} \tag{107}
\end{equation*}
$$

Determinant of the product of two matrices is equal to the product of the determinants

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Psi=\frac{1}{\sqrt{N!}} \operatorname{det} \mathbf{B}=\frac{1}{\sqrt{N!}} \operatorname{det} \mathbf{A} \mathbf{T}=\frac{1}{\sqrt{N!}} \operatorname{det} \mathbf{A} \operatorname{det} \mathbf{T}=\operatorname{det} \mathbf{T} \cdot \Phi \tag{108}
\end{equation*}
$$

If the transformation is unitary $\mathbf{U}^{-1}=\mathbf{U}^{\dagger}$, then $|\operatorname{det} \mathbf{U}|=1$ and the wave function is invariant with respect to the unitary transformation of the spin orbitals.

Corollary: any determinant wave function can be written in terms of orthonormal spin orbitals. Let the overlap matrix

$$
S_{i j}=\left\langle\psi_{i} \mid \psi_{j}\right\rangle \neq \delta_{i j}
$$

and choose $\boldsymbol{T}$ a the following orthogonalization transformation (Löwdin orthogonalization)

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathbf{T}=\mathbf{S}^{-1 / 2} \mathbf{V} \tag{109}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\mathbf{V}$ is an arbitrary unitary matrix. In fact,

$$
\begin{align*}
\left\langle\phi_{i} \mid \phi_{j}\right\rangle & =\left\langle\sum_{\ell} T_{\ell i} \psi_{\ell} \mid \sum_{k} T_{k j} \psi_{k}\right\rangle=\sum_{\ell k} T_{\ell i}^{*}\left\langle\psi_{\ell} \mid \psi_{k}\right\rangle T_{k j} \\
& =\sum_{\ell k} T_{i \ell}^{\dagger} S_{\ell k} T_{k j}=\left(\mathbf{T}^{\dagger} \mathbf{S T}\right)_{i j}  \tag{110}\\
& =\left(\mathbf{V}^{\dagger} \mathbf{S}^{-1 / 2} \mathbf{S} \mathbf{S}^{-1 / 2} \mathbf{V}\right)_{i j} \\
& =\left(\mathbf{V}^{\dagger} \mathbf{V}\right)_{i j}=\delta_{i j}
\end{align*}
$$

### 9.2 Physical meaning of the determinant wave function

Consider a two-electron system with spin orbitals $\psi_{1}\left(\boldsymbol{x}_{1}\right)$ and $\psi_{2}\left(\boldsymbol{x}_{2}\right)$

- Hartree product

$$
\Psi(1,2)=\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \psi_{1}\left(\boldsymbol{x}_{1}\right) \psi_{2}\left(\boldsymbol{x}_{2}\right)
$$

Two particle density matrix

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Gamma\left(\boldsymbol{x}_{1}, \boldsymbol{x}_{2}\right)=2 \Psi^{*}\left(\boldsymbol{x}_{1}, \boldsymbol{x}_{2}\right) \Psi\left(\boldsymbol{x}_{1}, \boldsymbol{x}_{2}\right)=\left|\psi_{1}\left(\boldsymbol{x}_{1}\right)\right|^{2}\left|\psi_{2}\left(\boldsymbol{x}_{2}\right)\right|^{2} \tag{111}
\end{equation*}
$$

the simultaneous probability of finding electron-one in $d \boldsymbol{x}_{1}$ at $\boldsymbol{x}_{1}$ and in $\boldsymbol{x}_{2}$ at $\boldsymbol{x}_{2}$ is a simple product of the densities associated with the two electrons and the indistinguishability of the electrons is not respected.

- Determinant with electrons having opposite spins

$$
|\Psi(1,2)\rangle=\hat{\mathcal{A}}\left|\psi_{1}\left(\boldsymbol{x}_{1}\right) \psi_{2}\left(\boldsymbol{x}_{2}\right)\right\rangle=\hat{\mathcal{A}}\left|\phi_{1}\left(\boldsymbol{r}_{1}\right) \alpha\left(\sigma_{1}\right) \phi_{2}\left(\boldsymbol{r}_{2}\right) \beta\left(\sigma_{2}\right)\right\rangle
$$

Spin-dependent two-particle reduced density matrix

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Gamma\left(\boldsymbol{x}_{1}, \boldsymbol{x}_{2}\right)=\frac{1}{2}\left\{\phi_{1}\left(\boldsymbol{r}_{1}\right) \alpha\left(\sigma_{1}\right) \phi_{2}\left(\boldsymbol{r}_{2}\right) \beta\left(\sigma_{2}\right)-\phi_{1}\left(\boldsymbol{r}_{2}\right) \alpha\left(\sigma_{2}\right) \phi_{2}\left(\boldsymbol{r}_{1}\right) \beta\left(\sigma_{1}\right)\right\}^{2} \tag{112}
\end{equation*}
$$

The spinless $2 R D M$ is obtained by integration of the spin variables

$$
\begin{equation*}
\gamma\left(\boldsymbol{r}_{1}, \boldsymbol{r}_{2}\right)=\int d \sigma_{1} \int d \sigma_{2} \Gamma\left(\boldsymbol{x}_{1}, \boldsymbol{x}_{2}\right)=\frac{1}{2}\left\{\left|\phi_{1}\left(\boldsymbol{r}_{1}\right)\right|^{2}\left|\phi_{2}\left(\boldsymbol{r}_{2}\right)\right|^{2}+\left|\phi_{1}\left(\boldsymbol{r}_{2}\right)\right|^{2}\left|\phi_{2}\left(\boldsymbol{r}_{1}\right)\right|^{2}\right\} \tag{113}
\end{equation*}
$$

The indistinguishability of the electrons is reflected by the average of two terms, but the two electrons are uncorrelated. In particular, if the space part of the orbitals is the same,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\gamma\left(\boldsymbol{r}_{1}, \boldsymbol{r}_{1}\right) \neq 0 \tag{114}
\end{equation*}
$$

i.e. there is a finite probability of finding two electrons of opposite spins at the same point in space.

- Determinant with electrons having parallel spins

$$
|\Psi(1,2)\rangle=\hat{\mathcal{A}}\left|\psi_{1}\left(\boldsymbol{x}_{1}\right) \psi_{2}\left(\boldsymbol{x}_{2}\right)\right\rangle=\hat{\mathcal{A}}\left|\phi_{1}\left(\boldsymbol{r}_{1}\right) \beta\left(\sigma_{1}\right) \phi_{2}\left(\boldsymbol{r}_{2}\right) \beta\left(\sigma_{2}\right)\right\rangle
$$

After integration the spin dependent 2RDM, we obtain

$$
\begin{align*}
\gamma\left(\boldsymbol{r}_{1}, \boldsymbol{r}_{2}\right) & =\iint d \sigma_{1} d \sigma_{2} \Gamma\left(\boldsymbol{x}_{1}, \boldsymbol{x}_{2}\right) \\
& =\frac{1}{2}\left\{\left|\phi_{1}\left(\boldsymbol{r}_{1}\right)\right|^{2}\left|\phi_{2}\left(\boldsymbol{r}_{2}\right)\right|^{2}+\left|\phi_{1}\left(\boldsymbol{r}_{2}\right)\right|^{2}\left|\phi_{2}\left(\boldsymbol{r}_{1}\right)\right|^{2}\right.  \tag{115}\\
& \left.-\left[\phi_{1}^{*}\left(\boldsymbol{r}_{1}\right) \phi_{2}\left(\boldsymbol{r}_{1}\right) \phi_{2}^{*}\left(\boldsymbol{r}_{2}\right) \phi_{1}\left(\boldsymbol{r}_{2}\right)+\phi_{1}\left(\boldsymbol{r}_{1}\right) \phi_{2}^{*}\left(\boldsymbol{r}_{1}\right) \phi_{2}\left(\boldsymbol{r}_{2}\right) \phi_{1}^{*}\left(\boldsymbol{r}_{2}\right)\right]\right\}
\end{align*}
$$

Electrons of the same spin are correlated (Fermi hole) as it can be seen by calculating the probability of finding two electrons at the same point $\boldsymbol{r}_{1}$

$$
\begin{equation*}
\gamma\left(\boldsymbol{r}_{1}, \boldsymbol{r}_{1}\right)=0 \tag{116}
\end{equation*}
$$

In a Slater-determinant the motion of electrons with parallel spin is correlated but the motion of electrons with opposite spin is not.

## 10 Matrix elements between determinant wave functions

Two determinants constructed from two sets of spin orbitals $\left\{u_{i}\right\}$ and $\left\{v_{j}\right\}$ :

$$
U^{*}=\hat{\mathcal{A}}\left[u_{1}^{*}(1) u_{2}^{*}(2) \ldots u_{N}^{*}(N)\right] \quad \text { and } \quad V=\hat{\mathcal{A}}\left[v_{1}(1) v_{2}(2) \ldots v_{N}(N)\right]
$$

Consider the product $U^{*} V$

$$
\begin{equation*}
U^{*} V=\hat{\mathcal{A}}\left[u_{1}^{*}(1) u_{2}^{*}(2) \ldots u_{N}^{*}(N)\right] \cdot \hat{\mathcal{A}}\left[v_{1}(1) v_{2}(2) \ldots v_{N}(N)\right] \tag{117}
\end{equation*}
$$

It can be written using that $\hat{\mathcal{A}}^{\dagger}=\hat{\mathcal{A}}$ and $\hat{\mathcal{A}}^{2}=\sqrt{N!} \hat{\mathcal{A}}$ as

$$
\begin{aligned}
U^{*} V & =\left[u_{1}^{*}(1) u_{2}^{*}(2) \ldots u_{N}^{*}(N)\right] \cdot \hat{\mathcal{A}}^{\dagger} \hat{\mathcal{A}}\left[v_{1}(1) v_{2}(2) \ldots v_{N}(N)\right] \\
& =\sqrt{N!}\left[u_{1}^{*}(1) u_{2}^{*}(2) \ldots u_{N}^{*}(N)\right] \hat{\mathcal{A}}\left[v_{1}(1) v_{2}(2) \ldots v_{N}(N)\right] \\
& =\left[u_{1}^{*}(1) u_{2}^{*}(2) \ldots u_{N}^{*}(N)\right] \operatorname{det}\left[v_{1}(1) v_{2}(2) \ldots v_{N}(N)\right]
\end{aligned}
$$

The determinant $\operatorname{det}\{\boldsymbol{V}\}$ is multiplied $N$ times by factors of type $u_{i}^{*}(i)$.

Since the multiplication of a determinant by a number is equivalent to multiplying one of its rows by the same number, we can arrange this expression by attributing each multiplicative factor to one of the rows in the following way

$$
\begin{align*}
U^{*} V & =\operatorname{det}\left[u_{1}^{*}(1) v_{1}(1) \cdot \ldots u_{i}^{*}(i) v_{i}(i) \cdot \ldots u_{N}^{*}(N) v_{N}(N)\right] \\
& =\operatorname{det}\left\{u_{i}^{*}(i) v_{k}(i)\right\} \tag{118}
\end{align*}
$$

The product of two Slater determinants is also a determinant, formed from products of the oneelectron functions.
Matrix element of an operator $\hat{O}$

$$
\begin{align*}
\langle U| \hat{O}|V\rangle=\int \cdots \int d \boldsymbol{x}_{\mathbf{1}} \ldots d \boldsymbol{x}_{\boldsymbol{N}} \hat{O}(1,2 & , \ldots, N) \\
& \times \operatorname{det}\left[u_{1}^{*}(1) v_{1}(1) \cdot \ldots u_{i}^{*}(i) v_{i}(i) \cdot \ldots u_{N}^{*}(N) v_{N}(N)\right] \tag{119}
\end{align*}
$$

### 10.1 Laplace expansion formulae

An arbitrary determinant can be expanded according to the Laplace expansion formulae.

1. First order expansion formula

$$
\begin{equation*}
\operatorname{det}\{\mathbf{A}\}=\sum_{k} a_{k}(i) \mathcal{D}(i \mid k) \tag{120}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $a_{k}(i)=A_{i k}$, the minor, formed by the $i$-th row and $k$-th column, and $\mathcal{D}(i \mid k)$ is the corresponding cofactor, i.e. the signed determinant of the matrix obtained by deleting from the original one the $k$-th row and $i$-th column:

$$
(-1)^{k+i}\left|\begin{array}{ccccccc}
A_{11} & A_{12} & \ldots & A_{1, k-1} & A_{1, k+1} & \ldots & A_{1 N} \\
A_{21} & A_{22} & \ldots & A_{2, k-1} & A_{2, k+1} & \ldots & A_{2 N} \\
\vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots \\
A_{i-1,1} & A_{i-1,2} & \ldots & A_{i-1, k-1} & A_{i-1, k+1} & \ldots & A_{i-1, N} \\
A_{i+1,1} & A_{i+1,2} & \ldots & A_{i+1, k-1} & A_{i+1, k+1} & \ldots & A_{i+1, N} \\
\vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots \\
A_{N 1} & A_{N 2} & \ldots & A_{N, k-1} & A_{N, k+1} & \ldots & A_{N N}(N)
\end{array}\right|
$$

Applied to the product of two determinants:

$$
\begin{equation*}
U^{*} \cdot V=\sum_{k} u_{i}^{*}(i) v_{k}(i) \mathcal{D}(k \mid i) \tag{121}
\end{equation*}
$$

## 2. Second-order Laplace expansion formula

$$
\operatorname{det}\{\mathbf{A}\}=\frac{1}{2} \sum_{k \ell}\left|\begin{array}{ll}
A_{i k} & A_{i \ell}  \tag{122}\\
A_{j k} & A_{j \ell}
\end{array}\right| \mathcal{D}(i j \mid k \ell)
$$

where the minor is a $2 \times 2$ determinant formed by the $k$ and $\ell$-th rows and $i$ and $j$-th columns, and $\mathcal{D}(i j \mid k \ell)$ is the corresponding cofactor, i.e. the signed determinant of the matrix obtained by deleting from the original one the $k$ and $\ell$-th row and $i$ and $j$-th column.

Applied to the product of two determinants:

$$
U^{*} \cdot V=\sum_{k<\ell}\left|\begin{array}{cc}
u_{i}^{*}(i) v_{k}(i) & u_{i}^{*}(i) v_{\ell}(i)  \tag{123}\\
u_{j}^{*}(j) v_{k}(j) & u_{j}^{*}(j) v_{\ell}(j)
\end{array}\right| \mathcal{D}(i j \mid k \ell)
$$

### 10.2 Overlap of two determinants

Applying the general result for $\hat{O}=1$

$$
\begin{align*}
& \langle U \mid V\rangle=\int \cdots \int d \boldsymbol{x}_{\mathbf{1}} \ldots d \boldsymbol{x}_{\boldsymbol{N}} \operatorname{det}\left[u_{1}^{*}(1) v_{1}(1) \cdots u_{i}^{*}(i) v_{i}^{*}(i) \cdots u_{N}^{*}(N) v_{N}(N)\right] \\
& =\operatorname{det}\left[\int d \boldsymbol{x}_{\mathbf{1}} u_{1}^{*}(1) v_{1}(1) \cdots \int d \boldsymbol{x}_{\boldsymbol{i}} u_{i}^{*}(i) v_{i}(i) \cdots \int d \boldsymbol{x}_{\boldsymbol{N}} u_{N}^{*}(N) v_{N}(N)\right] \tag{124}
\end{align*}
$$

which is an antisymmetrized product of $N$ one-particle overlap integrals.

$$
\begin{equation*}
\langle U \mid V\rangle=\operatorname{det}\left[\left\langle u_{1} \mid v_{1}\right\rangle\left\langle u_{2} \mid v_{2}\right\rangle \ldots\left\langle u_{N} \mid v_{N}\right\rangle\right]=\operatorname{det}\left\{\left\langle u_{i} \mid v_{j}\right\rangle\right\} \tag{125}
\end{equation*}
$$

determinant of the overlap matrix $S_{u_{i} v_{j}}$ formed from the two sets of spin orbitals

$$
\begin{equation*}
\langle U \mid V\rangle=\operatorname{det}\{\mathbf{S}\} \tag{126}
\end{equation*}
$$

### 10.3 Matrix elements of one-electron operators

Let $H_{1}$ a the symmetric sum of $h(i)$ one-electron operators:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\hat{H}_{1}=\sum_{i} \hat{h}(i) \tag{127}
\end{equation*}
$$

First-order Laplace expansion formula of the product of determinants and put into the general result

$$
\begin{align*}
\langle U| \hat{H}_{1}|V\rangle=\sum_{i} \sum_{k}\left\{\int d \boldsymbol{x}_{i} u_{i}^{*}(i) \hat{h}(i) v_{k}(i)\right\} & \times \\
& \times\left\{\int \cdots \int d \boldsymbol{x}_{i} \ldots d \boldsymbol{x}_{i-1} d \boldsymbol{x}_{i+1} \ldots d \boldsymbol{x}_{N} \mathcal{D}(k \mid i)\right\} \tag{128}
\end{align*}
$$

The first part is just a one-electron integral. The second part, analogous to the overlap integral discussed above, is the $a_{k}(i)=A_{i k}$ cofactor of the determinant of the overlap matrix $\left\langle u_{i} \mid v_{k}\right\rangle$. $\mathcal{D}(k \mid i)$ is the determinant of the overlap matrix obtained by deleting the $i$-th row and $k$-th column.
The standard expression of an inverse matrix

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left(\mathbf{S}^{-1}\right)_{i k}=\frac{\mathcal{D}(k \mid i)}{\operatorname{det}\{\mathbf{S}\}} \tag{129}
\end{equation*}
$$

the matrix elements of a one-electron operator can be written in terms of the one-electron integrals, the determinant of the overlap matrix and its inverse

$$
\begin{equation*}
\langle U| H_{1}|V\rangle=\sum_{i, k}\left\langle u_{i}\right| h\left|v_{k}\right\rangle\left(\mathbf{S}^{-1}\right)_{i k} \operatorname{det}\{\mathbf{S}\} \tag{130}
\end{equation*}
$$

### 10.4 Matrix elements of two-electron operators

Let us consider the two-electron symmetric operator

$$
\begin{equation*}
\hat{H}_{2}=\frac{1}{2} \sum_{i, j}^{\prime} \hat{g}(i, j) \tag{131}
\end{equation*}
$$

Taking the second-order Laplace expansion of the determinant product in the matrix element expression and using the expression for the integral of the second-order cofactor, $\mathcal{D}(i j \mid k \ell)$

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathcal{D}(i j \mid k \ell)=\left[\left(\mathbf{S}^{-1}\right)_{k i}\left(\mathbf{S}^{-1}\right)_{\ell j}-\left(\mathbf{S}^{-1}\right)_{k j}\left(\mathbf{S}^{-1}\right)_{\ell i}\right] \operatorname{det}\{\mathbf{S}\} \tag{132}
\end{equation*}
$$

we have the following expression

$$
\begin{align*}
&\langle U| \hat{H}_{2}|V\rangle=\sum_{i<j} \sum_{k<\ell}\left\{\int \int d \boldsymbol { x } _ { i } d \boldsymbol { x } _ { j } \left[u_{i}^{*}(i) v_{k}(i) \hat{g}(i, j) u_{j}^{*}(j) v_{\ell}(j)-\right.\right. \\
&\left.\left.-u_{i}^{*}(i) v_{\ell}(i) \hat{g}(i, j) u_{j}^{*}(j) v_{k}(j)\right]\right\} \\
& \times\left\{\left(\mathbf{S}^{-1}\right)_{k i}\left(\mathbf{S}^{-1}\right)_{\ell j}-\left(\mathbf{S}^{-1}\right)_{k j}\left(\mathbf{S}^{-1}\right)_{\ell i}\right\} \operatorname{det}\{\mathbf{S}\} \tag{133}
\end{align*}
$$

### 10.5 Notations for two-electron integrals

Two-electron integral of spin orbitals $\psi(\boldsymbol{x})=\phi(\boldsymbol{x}) \eta(\sigma)$ in the bra-ket notation

$$
\begin{align*}
\iint d \boldsymbol{x}_{1} d \boldsymbol{x}_{2} \psi_{i}^{*}(1) \psi_{k}(1) \hat{g}(1,2) \psi_{j}^{*}(2) \psi_{\ell}(2) & =\left\langle\psi_{i}^{*}(1) \psi_{j}^{*}(2) \mid \psi_{k}(1) \psi_{\ell}(2)\right\rangle  \tag{134}\\
& =\langle i j \mid k \ell\rangle
\end{align*}
$$

This is the physicist's notation, respecting the conventions for the bra and ket vectors

$$
\begin{gathered}
\langle i j|=\psi_{i}^{*}(1) \psi_{j}^{*}(2) \\
|k \ell\rangle=\psi_{k}(1) \psi_{\ell}(2)
\end{gathered}
$$

The antisymmetrized two-electron integral, appearing in the matrix elements of the the two-electron operators, is usually denoted as

$$
\begin{equation*}
\langle i j \mid k \ell\rangle-\langle i j \mid \ell k\rangle=\langle i j \| k \ell\rangle \tag{135}
\end{equation*}
$$

The chemist's notation emphasizes that a two-electron integral is the electrostatic interaction of two charge distributions

$$
\begin{equation*}
\iint d \boldsymbol{x}_{1} d \boldsymbol{x}_{2} \underbrace{\psi_{i}^{*}(1) \psi_{k}(1)}_{\rho_{i k}(1)} \hat{g}(1,2) \underbrace{\psi_{j}^{*}(2) \psi_{\ell}(2)}_{\rho_{j \ell}(2)}=[i k \mid j \ell] \tag{136}
\end{equation*}
$$

In numerical calculations is more advantageous to express integrals directly in spatial orbitals. The transformation is obvious using the orthogonality of the spin functions

$$
\begin{equation*}
[i k \mid j \ell]=\left(\phi_{i} \phi_{k} \mid \phi_{j} \phi_{\ell}\right) \delta_{\eta_{i} \eta_{k}} \delta_{\eta_{j} \eta_{\ell}} \tag{137}
\end{equation*}
$$

In particular,

$$
\langle i j \| i j\rangle= \begin{cases}\text { parallel spin } & {[i i \mid j j]-[i j \mid i j]=(i i \mid j j)-(i j \mid i j)}  \tag{138}\\ \text { antiparallel spin } & {[i i \mid \bar{j} \bar{j}]-[i \bar{j} \mid i \bar{i}]=(i i \mid j j)}\end{cases}
$$

### 10.6 Summary of matrix element rules

- overlap

$$
\begin{equation*}
\langle U \mid V\rangle=\operatorname{det}\{\mathbf{S}\} \tag{139}
\end{equation*}
$$

- one-electron operator

$$
\begin{equation*}
\langle U| \hat{H}_{1}|V\rangle=\sum_{i, k}\left\langle u_{i}\right| \hat{h}\left|v_{k}\right\rangle\left(\mathbf{S}^{-1}\right)_{i k} \operatorname{det}\{\mathbf{S}\} \tag{140}
\end{equation*}
$$

- two-electron operator

$$
\begin{equation*}
\langle U| \hat{H}_{2}|V\rangle=\sum_{i<j} \sum_{k<\ell}\langle i j \| k \ell\rangle\left\{\left(\mathbf{S}^{-1}\right)_{k i}\left(\mathbf{S}^{-1}\right)_{\ell j}-\left(\mathbf{S}^{-1}\right)_{k j}\left(\mathbf{S}^{-1}\right)_{\ell i}\right\} \operatorname{det}\{\mathbf{S}\} \tag{141}
\end{equation*}
$$

### 10.7 Slater rules

We need these results applied to the special case of determinants built from a unique set of orthonormal spin orbitals, $\left\{\psi_{i}\right\}$. Let $D$ such a determinant, any other determinant can be generated by replacing one, two, or more spin orbitals $\{a, b, c, d, \ldots\}$ occupied in $D$ by other spin orbitals, $\{r, s, t, u, \ldots\}$ not occupied in $D$

$$
D(a \rightarrow r)=D_{a}^{r} \quad D(a \rightarrow r, b \rightarrow s)=D_{a b}^{r s} \quad D(a \rightarrow r, b \rightarrow s, c \rightarrow t)=D_{a b c}^{r s t}
$$

## Overlap

$$
\begin{equation*}
\langle D \mid D\rangle=\operatorname{det}\{\mathbf{S}\} \tag{142}
\end{equation*}
$$

since $S_{a b}=\delta_{a b}$

$$
\begin{equation*}
\langle D \mid D\rangle=1 \tag{143}
\end{equation*}
$$

If the two determinants differ in at least one orbital

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left\langle D \mid D_{a}^{r}\right\rangle=0 \tag{144}
\end{equation*}
$$

since due to the orthogonality of the orbitals $S_{a r}=0 \quad \forall a$, i.e. one row in the determinant $\operatorname{det}\{\mathbf{S}\}$ is zero.

## One-electron matrix elements

$$
\langle U| H_{1}|V\rangle=\sum_{i, k}\left\langle u_{i}\right| h\left|v_{k}\right\rangle\left(\mathbf{S}^{-1}\right)_{i k} \operatorname{det}\{\mathbf{S}\}
$$

- $U=V=D$, since $S_{i k}=\delta_{i k}$ and $\operatorname{det}\{\boldsymbol{S}\}=1$

$$
\begin{equation*}
\langle D| \hat{H}_{1}|D\rangle=\sum_{i}\left\langle\psi_{i}\right| \hat{h}\left|\psi_{i}\right\rangle \tag{145}
\end{equation*}
$$

- $V=D \quad$ and $\quad U=D_{a}^{r}$ only one cofactor is nonzero

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left\langle D_{a}^{r}\right| \hat{H}_{1}|D\rangle=\left\langle\psi_{r}\right| \hat{h}\left|\psi_{a}\right\rangle \tag{146}
\end{equation*}
$$

- $V=D \quad$ and $\quad U=D_{a b}^{r s}$ all cofactors are zero

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left\langle D_{a b}^{r s}\right| \hat{H}_{1}|D\rangle=0 \tag{147}
\end{equation*}
$$

## Two-electron matrix elements

$$
\langle U| \hat{H}_{2}|V\rangle=\sum_{i<j} \sum_{k<\ell}\langle i j||k \ell\rangle\left\{\left(\mathbf{S}^{-1}\right)_{k i}\left(\mathbf{S}^{-1}\right)_{\ell j}-\left(\mathbf{S}^{-1}\right)_{k j}\left(\mathbf{S}^{-1}\right)_{\ell i}\right\} \operatorname{det}\{\mathbf{S}\}
$$

- $U=V=D$ then $\mathcal{D}(i j \mid k \ell)=\delta_{i k} \delta_{\ell j}$ since $i=\ell$ and $k=j$ cases cannot occur

$$
\begin{align*}
\langle D| \hat{H}_{2}|D\rangle & =\sum_{i<j} \sum_{k<\ell}\langle i k \| j \ell\rangle\left(\delta_{i k} \delta_{j \ell}-\delta_{j k} \delta_{i \ell}\right)  \tag{148}\\
& =\sum_{i<j} \sum_{k<\ell}\langle i j \| k \ell\rangle \delta_{i k} \delta_{j \ell}=\sum_{i<j}\langle i j \| i j\rangle
\end{align*}
$$

- $U=D_{a}^{r}$ apply the general formula

$$
\begin{equation*}
\langle U| \hat{H}_{2}|V\rangle=\sum_{i<j} \sum_{k<\ell}\left\langle u_{i} u_{j} \| v_{k} v_{\ell}\right\rangle \mathcal{D}(i j \mid k \ell) \tag{149}
\end{equation*}
$$

the $\mathbf{S}$ matrix is diagonal, excepted the $S_{a a}$ element.

- $i=k=a$ case: $\mathcal{D}(a j \mid a \ell)=\delta_{j \ell}$ and sum over $\ell=j>a$

$$
\sum_{\ell>a}\langle r \ell \| a \ell\rangle
$$

- $j=\ell=a$ case: $\mathcal{D}(i a \mid k a)=\delta_{i k}$ and sum over $k=i<a$

$$
\sum_{k<a}\langle k r \| k a\rangle=\sum_{\ell<a}\langle r \ell \| a \ell\rangle
$$

Summarizing these two cases

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left\langle D_{a}^{r}\right| \hat{H}_{2}|D\rangle=\sum_{\substack{j=1 \\ j \neq a}}^{N}\langle r j \| a j\rangle \tag{150}
\end{equation*}
$$

- $U=D_{a b}^{r s}$ only one non-zero cofactor, $\mathcal{D}(a b \mid a b)=1$

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left\langle D_{a b}^{r s}\right| \hat{H}_{2}|D\rangle=\langle r s||a b\rangle \tag{151}
\end{equation*}
$$

### 10.8 Variation of a determinant wave function

The determinant

$$
\begin{equation*}
|\Psi\rangle=\mathcal{A}\left[\psi_{1}(1) \psi_{2}(2) \ldots \psi_{N}(N)\right] \tag{152}
\end{equation*}
$$

can be varied through the variation of the one-electron orbitals:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\psi_{a} \rightarrow \psi_{a}+\delta \psi_{a}=\psi_{a}+p_{a} \psi_{a}{ }^{\prime} \tag{153}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\psi_{a}^{\prime}$ is an arbitrary spin orbital and $p_{a}$ is a complex variation parameter.

$$
\begin{equation*}
|\Psi+\delta \Psi\rangle=\mathcal{A}\left[\left\{\psi_{1}(1)+p_{1} \psi_{1}^{\prime}\right\}\left\{\psi_{2}(2)+p_{2} \psi_{2}^{\prime}\right\} \ldots\left\{\psi_{N}(N)+p_{N} \psi_{N}^{\prime}\right\}\right] \tag{154}
\end{equation*}
$$

This is a sum of $2^{N}$ determinant. To first order in the $p_{a}$ parameters the variation is a sum of singly excited determinants:

$$
\begin{equation*}
|\delta \Psi\rangle=\sum_{a} p_{a}\left|\Psi\left(\psi_{a} \rightarrow \psi_{a}^{\prime}\right)\right\rangle \tag{155}
\end{equation*}
$$

Let the $\hat{Q}$ the projection operator on the subspace of the orbitals that are occupied in the determinant and $\hat{P}$ the projector to its orthogonal complement

$$
\begin{equation*}
\hat{Q}=\sum_{i}^{N}\left|\psi_{a}\right\rangle\left\langle\psi_{a}\right| \quad \hat{P}=1-\hat{Q}=\sum_{r \notin\{a\}}\left|\psi_{r}\right\rangle\left\langle\psi_{r}\right| \tag{156}
\end{equation*}
$$

The arbitrary spin orbital $\psi_{a}^{\prime}$ can be decomposed as:

$$
\begin{equation*}
p_{a}\left|\psi_{a}^{\prime}\right\rangle=\sum_{b}^{N} q_{b a}\left|\psi_{b}\right\rangle+\sum_{r} p_{r a}\left|\psi_{r}\right\rangle \tag{157}
\end{equation*}
$$

where the set of orbitals $\left\{\psi_{r}\right\}$ are taken from the orthogonal complement of the occupied set $\left\{\psi_{a}\right\}$. $\sum_{b}^{N} q_{b a} \psi_{b}$ does not change the determinant, up to a factor of normalization.
An arbitrary variation of a determinant can be written as a sum of singly excited determinants

$$
\begin{equation*}
|\delta \Psi\rangle=\sum_{a}^{N} \sum_{r} p_{r a}\left|\Psi_{a}^{r}\right\rangle \tag{158}
\end{equation*}
$$

## 11 Method of Second Quantization

Up to now, we satisfied the antisymmetry requirement by using determinant wave function. The same goal can be achieved by transferring this antisymmetry property on the algebraic properties of electron creation and annihilation operators.
No essentially new physics, just a convenient way to handle wave functions, operators and matrix elements.

### 11.1 Representations of determinant wave functions

The determinant wave function can be considered as an ordered product of occupied spin orbitals

$$
\begin{equation*}
D\left(\boldsymbol{x}_{1}, \boldsymbol{x}_{2}, \ldots, \boldsymbol{x}_{N}\right) \Leftrightarrow\left|\psi_{1} \psi_{2} \ldots \psi_{a} \ldots \psi_{b} \ldots \psi_{N}\right| \tag{159}
\end{equation*}
$$

The set of occupied spin orbitals is the electron configuration.
Particle number representation:
the number of electrons filling each of the orbitals occupation number is given explicitly ( $n_{i}=$ 0 or 1)

$$
\begin{equation*}
D\left(\boldsymbol{x}_{1}, \boldsymbol{x}_{2}, \ldots, \boldsymbol{x}_{N}\right) \Leftrightarrow\left|n_{1} n_{2} \ldots n_{k} \ldots n_{\ell} \ldots n_{M}\right\rangle \tag{160}
\end{equation*}
$$

For instance:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& |D\rangle \\
& =\left|11111 \ldots 11_{N} 00 \ldots 000 \ldots 000\right\rangle \\
& \left|D_{a}^{r}\right\rangle \quad=\left|11101 \ldots 1{\underset{N}{N}}_{100 \ldots}^{r} 100 \ldots 000\right\rangle
\end{aligned}
$$

### 11.2 Fock space

The Fock space is the vector space constituted of all the possible "kets", corresponding to the total number of electrons between 0 and $M$.
The vacuum state is an abstract state with 0 electron:

$$
\begin{equation*}
|\mathrm{vac}\rangle=\left|0_{1} 0_{2} 0_{3} \ldots 0_{M}\right\rangle \tag{161}
\end{equation*}
$$

Properties of the vacuum:

- normalization

$$
\begin{equation*}
\langle\mathrm{vac} \mid \mathrm{vac}\rangle=1 \tag{162}
\end{equation*}
$$

- orthogonal to all other states

Second quantized operators manipulate the occupation numbers of the vectors in the Fock-space.

### 11.3 Creation of electrons

A one-electron state, $\psi_{k}(1)$ can be represented by the creation of an electron on the spin orbital $\psi_{k}$

$$
\begin{equation*}
|k\rangle=a_{k}^{+}|\mathrm{vac}\rangle \tag{163}
\end{equation*}
$$

A two-electron state, $\Psi(1,2)$ is represented in the wave function language as a Slater determinant

$$
D(1,2)=\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\left|\begin{array}{ll}
\psi_{i}(1) & \psi_{k}(1)  \tag{164}\\
\psi_{i}(2) & \psi_{k}(2)
\end{array}\right|
$$

The same state is written in a second quantization language as

$$
\begin{equation*}
D(1,2) \Leftrightarrow|i k\rangle=a_{i}^{+} a_{k}^{+}|\mathrm{vac}\rangle \tag{165}
\end{equation*}
$$

As a consequence of the antisymmetry property of $D(1,2)$

$$
\begin{equation*}
D(1,2)=-D(2,1) \tag{166}
\end{equation*}
$$

we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
a_{i}^{+} a_{k}^{+}|\mathrm{vac}\rangle=-a_{k}^{+} a_{i}^{+}|\mathrm{vac}\rangle \tag{167}
\end{equation*}
$$

The antisymmetry of the wave function is translated as an algebraic property of the creation operators:

$$
\begin{equation*}
a_{i}^{+} a_{k}^{+}+a_{k}^{+} a_{i}^{+}=0 \tag{168}
\end{equation*}
$$

The creation operators of electrons (fermions) anticommute:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left[a_{k}^{+}, a_{i}^{+}\right]_{+}=0 \tag{169}
\end{equation*}
$$

If $k=i$

$$
\begin{equation*}
a_{i}^{+} a_{i}^{+}=-a_{i}^{+} a_{i}^{+}=0 \tag{170}
\end{equation*}
$$

We are not allowed to create electrons twice on the same spin orbital:
Pauli principle.

### 11.4 Annihilation of electrons

The operator that removes an electron from a spin orbital is called the annihilation operator

$$
\begin{equation*}
a_{i}|i\rangle=|\mathrm{vac}\rangle \tag{171}
\end{equation*}
$$

We are not allowed to remove an electron from the vacuum

$$
\begin{equation*}
a_{i}|\mathrm{vac}\rangle=0 \tag{172}
\end{equation*}
$$

In order to annihilate an electron on the orbital $\psi_{i}$, this orbital should be immediately to the right of the annihilator, e.g.

$$
\begin{equation*}
a_{i}|i k\rangle=a_{i} a_{i}^{+} a_{k}^{+}|\mathrm{vac}\rangle=a_{k}^{+}|\mathrm{vac}\rangle=|k\rangle \tag{173}
\end{equation*}
$$

If the position of the spin orbital $\psi_{i}$ was not appropriate, we must do transpositions until it is placed to the right of $a_{i}$

$$
\begin{equation*}
a_{i}|k i\rangle=a_{i} a_{k}^{+} a_{i}^{+}|\mathrm{vac}\rangle=-a_{i} a_{i}^{+} a_{k}^{+}|\mathrm{vac}\rangle=-a_{k}^{+}|\mathrm{vac}\rangle=-|k\rangle \tag{174}
\end{equation*}
$$

The sign depends on the number of transpositions:

- even number of transpositions: + sign

$$
\begin{equation*}
a_{3} a_{2}^{+} a_{1}^{+} a_{3}^{+}|\mathrm{vac}\rangle=-a_{3} a_{2}^{+} a_{3}^{+} a_{1}^{+}|\mathrm{vac}\rangle=+a_{3} a_{3}^{+} a_{2}^{+} a_{1}^{+}|\mathrm{vac}\rangle=a_{2}^{+} a_{1}^{+}|\mathrm{vac}\rangle \tag{175}
\end{equation*}
$$

- odd number of transpositions: - sign

$$
\begin{equation*}
a_{3} a_{2}^{+} a_{3}^{+} a_{1}^{+}|\mathrm{vac}\rangle=-a_{3} a_{3}^{+} a_{2}^{+} a_{1}^{+}|\mathrm{vac}\rangle=-a_{2}^{+} a_{1}^{+}|\mathrm{vac}\rangle \tag{176}
\end{equation*}
$$

### 11.5 Commutation relations

Let us consider an $N$-electron determinant in the particle number representation

$$
\begin{equation*}
|D\rangle=\left|n_{1} n_{2} n_{3} \ldots n_{i} \ldots n_{k} \ldots n_{M}\right\rangle \tag{177}
\end{equation*}
$$

and reorder the orbitals so that $n_{i}$ and $n_{k}$ be in the first two positions

$$
\begin{equation*}
|D\rangle= \pm\left|n_{i} n_{k} n_{1} n_{2} n_{3} \ldots n_{M}\right\rangle \tag{178}
\end{equation*}
$$

Study the effect of $a_{i} a_{k}^{+}$on this determinant

$$
\begin{equation*}
a_{i} a_{k}^{+}\left|n_{i} n_{k} n_{1} n_{2} n_{3} \ldots n_{M}\right\rangle \tag{179}
\end{equation*}
$$

This expression is zero, if

- $n_{k}=1$ cannot create $\mathrm{e}^{-}$on an already occupied orbital (Pauli principle)
- $n_{i}=0$ cannot annihilate an $\mathrm{e}^{-}$on an empty orbital

Without loosing the generality of our conclusions, we can study the effect of $a_{i} a_{k}^{+}$on $|i\rangle$

$$
\begin{equation*}
a_{i} a_{k}^{+}|i\rangle=a_{i}|k i\rangle=-a_{i}|i k\rangle=-|k\rangle \tag{180}
\end{equation*}
$$

Similarly, for the operators in the reverse order

$$
\begin{equation*}
a_{k}^{+} a_{i}|i\rangle=a_{k}^{+}|\mathrm{vac}\rangle=|k\rangle \tag{181}
\end{equation*}
$$

This is an "excitation operator", i.e. removes an electron from $i$ and puts it on $k$. By the virtue of the above results, for an arbitrary determinant

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left(a_{i} a_{k}^{+}+a_{k}^{+} a_{i}\right)|D\rangle=0 \tag{182}
\end{equation*}
$$

which is equivalent to the following relationship between the operators $(i \neq k)$

$$
\begin{equation*}
a_{i} a_{k}^{+}+a_{k}^{+} a_{i}=0 \tag{183}
\end{equation*}
$$

Let us examine the case of $i=k$. Two possibilities

$$
\begin{array}{ccc} 
& n_{i}=0 & n_{i}=1 \\
a_{i}^{+} a_{i}\left|n_{1} \ldots n_{i} \ldots n_{M}\right\rangle= & 0 & \left|n_{1} \ldots n_{i} \ldots n_{M}\right\rangle \\
a_{i} a_{i}^{+}\left|n_{1} \ldots n_{i} \ldots n_{M}\right\rangle= & \left|n_{1} \ldots n_{i} \ldots n_{M}\right\rangle & 0
\end{array}
$$

After summing the two equations we obtain

$$
\begin{equation*}
a_{i} a_{i}^{+}+a_{i}^{+} a_{i}=\hat{1} \tag{184}
\end{equation*}
$$

The two results can be summarized in the anticommutation relation

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left[a_{i}, a_{k}^{+}\right]_{+}=\delta_{i k} \tag{185}
\end{equation*}
$$

### 11.6 Adjoint relations

The role of the operator $a_{i}$ is to annihilate the effect of $a_{i}^{+}$

$$
\begin{equation*}
a_{i} a_{k}^{+}|\mathrm{vac}\rangle=\delta_{i k}|\mathrm{vac}\rangle \tag{186}
\end{equation*}
$$

Let us consider the functions $\psi_{i}$ and $\psi_{k}$, members of an orthonormal set of functions $\left\{\psi_{i}\right\}_{i=1}^{M}$, i.e.

$$
\begin{equation*}
S_{i k}=\langle i \mid k\rangle=\delta_{i k} \tag{187}
\end{equation*}
$$

The $\psi_{k}$ function can be written as

$$
\begin{equation*}
|k\rangle=a_{k}^{+}|\mathrm{vac}\rangle \tag{188}
\end{equation*}
$$

and the adjoint of the analogous definition for $\psi_{i}=|i\rangle$

$$
\begin{equation*}
\langle i|=\langle\operatorname{vac}|\left(a_{i}^{+}\right)^{\dagger} \tag{189}
\end{equation*}
$$

The scalar product, i.e. the overlap integral is

$$
\begin{equation*}
S_{i k}=\langle\operatorname{vac}|\left(a_{i}^{+}\right)^{\dagger} a_{k}^{+}|\mathrm{vac}\rangle \tag{190}
\end{equation*}
$$

Since $S_{i k}=\delta_{i k}$ is diagonal

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left(a_{i}^{+}\right)^{\dagger} a_{k}^{+}|\mathrm{vac}\rangle=\delta_{i k}|\mathrm{vac}\rangle \tag{191}
\end{equation*}
$$

After comparison with Eq.(186) we conclude that

$$
\begin{equation*}
a_{i}=\left(a_{i}^{+}\right)^{\dagger} \tag{192}
\end{equation*}
$$

i.e. in the case of orthonormal basis functions, the annihilation operator is the adjoint of the creation operator.
The "bra" corresponding to the "ket"

$$
|D\rangle=a_{N}^{+} \ldots a_{2}^{+} a_{1}^{+}|\mathrm{vac}\rangle
$$

is

$$
\langle D|=\langle\operatorname{vac}| a_{1} a_{2} \ldots a_{N}
$$

### 11.7 Non-orthogonal functions

Overlap matrix is non-diagonal

$$
\begin{equation*}
S_{\mu \nu}=\left\langle\chi_{\mu} \mid \chi_{\nu}\right\rangle=\langle\operatorname{vac}|\left(\chi_{\mu}^{+}\right)^{\dagger} \chi_{\nu}^{+}|\mathrm{vac}\rangle \tag{193}
\end{equation*}
$$

Introduce the notation

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left(\chi_{\mu}^{+}\right)^{\dagger}=\chi_{\mu}^{-} \tag{194}
\end{equation*}
$$

Following anticommutation relation can be derived

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left[\chi_{\nu}^{+}, \chi_{\mu}^{-}\right]_{+}=S_{\mu \nu} \tag{195}
\end{equation*}
$$

Take an auxiliary Löwdin-orthogonalized basis $\psi_{\lambda}=\sum_{\mu} S_{\lambda \mu}^{-1 / 2} \chi_{\mu}$. The creation and and annihilation operators can be transformed to this basis as

$$
\begin{array}{ll}
\psi_{\lambda}^{+}=\sum_{\mu} S_{\lambda \mu}^{-1 / 2} \chi_{\mu}^{+} & \chi_{\mu}^{+}=\sum_{\lambda} S_{\mu \lambda}^{1 / 2} \psi_{\lambda}^{+} \\
\psi_{\tau}^{-}=\sum_{\nu} S_{\nu \tau}^{-1 / 2} \chi_{\nu}^{-} & \chi_{\nu}^{+}=\sum_{\tau} S_{\tau \nu}^{1 / 2} \psi_{\tau}^{-} \tag{197}
\end{array}
$$

Applying these transformations

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left[\chi_{\nu}^{+}, \chi_{\mu}^{-}\right]_{-}=\sum_{\lambda \tau} S_{\mu \lambda}^{1 / 2} S_{\tau \nu}^{1 / 2}\left[\psi_{\lambda}^{+}, \psi_{\tau}^{-}\right]_{+}=\sum_{\lambda \tau} S_{\mu \lambda}^{1 / 2} S_{\tau \nu}^{1 / 2} \delta_{\lambda \tau}=S_{\mu \nu} \tag{198}
\end{equation*}
$$

The operator $\chi_{\mu}^{-}$is not a true annihilation operator, for instance

$$
\begin{equation*}
\chi_{\mu}^{-}\left|\chi_{\mu} \chi_{\lambda}\right\rangle=S_{\mu \mu}\left|\chi_{\lambda}\right\rangle-S_{\mu \lambda}\left|\chi_{\mu}\right\rangle \tag{199}
\end{equation*}
$$

### 11.8 Properties of creation and annihilation operators: Summary

Properties of the vacuum

$$
\begin{aligned}
\langle\mathrm{vac} \mid \mathrm{vac}\rangle & =1 \\
a_{k}|\mathrm{vac}\rangle & =0 \\
\langle\mathrm{vac}| a_{k}^{+} & =0
\end{aligned}
$$

Anticommutation relations (Pauli principle)

$$
\begin{aligned}
& {\left[a_{i}^{+}, a_{k}^{+}\right]_{+}=0} \\
& {\left[a_{i}, a_{k}\right]_{+}=0} \\
& {\left[a_{i}^{+}, a_{k}\right]_{+}=\delta_{i k}}
\end{aligned}
$$

Adjoint relation

$$
a_{k}=\left(a_{k}^{+}\right)^{\dagger}
$$

Correspondences

$$
\begin{aligned}
&\left|\psi_{i}\right\rangle \Leftrightarrow a_{i}^{+}|\mathrm{vac}\rangle \\
&|D\rangle \Leftrightarrow a_{N}^{+} \ldots a_{2}^{+} a_{1}^{+}|\mathrm{vac}\rangle \\
&\left\langle\psi_{i}\right| \Leftrightarrow\langle\mathrm{vac}| a_{i} \\
&|D\rangle \Leftrightarrow\langle\mathrm{vac}| a_{1} a_{2} \ldots a_{N}
\end{aligned}
$$

### 11.9 Particle number operator

A sequence of annihilation and creation operators acting on the same orbital

$$
\hat{n}_{i}=a_{i}^{+} a_{i}
$$

"measures" the occupation number of this orbital, i.e. tells if it is occupied $\left(n_{i}=1\right)$ or if it is empty ( $n_{i}=0$ )

$$
\begin{equation*}
\hat{n}_{i}|D\rangle=a_{i}^{+} a_{i}\left|n_{1} \ldots n_{i} \ldots n_{M}\right\rangle=n_{i}\left|n_{1} \ldots n_{i} \ldots n_{M}\right\rangle=n_{i}|D\rangle \tag{200}
\end{equation*}
$$

Determinant wave function is eigenfunction of $\hat{n}_{i}$ with eigenvalue $n_{i}$.
Operator of the total number of particles

$$
\begin{equation*}
\hat{N}=\sum_{i=1}^{M} \hat{n}_{i}=\sum_{i=1}^{M} a_{i}^{+} a_{i} \tag{201}
\end{equation*}
$$

Single determinants are eigenfunctions of $\hat{N}$

$$
\begin{equation*}
\hat{N}|D\rangle=\sum_{i=1}^{M} n_{i}|D\rangle=N|D\rangle \tag{202}
\end{equation*}
$$

as well as multi-determinant wave functions

$$
\begin{equation*}
\hat{N}|\Psi\rangle=\sum_{K} c_{K} \hat{N}\left|D_{K}\right\rangle=\sum_{K} c_{K} \sum_{i=1}^{M} n_{i K}\left|D_{K}\right\rangle=\sum_{K} c_{K} N\left|D_{K}\right\rangle=N|\Psi\rangle \tag{203}
\end{equation*}
$$

### 11.10 Representation of operators

In the first quantization representation an operator $\hat{A}^{S}$ transforms the function $\Psi$ to another one $\Phi$

$$
\hat{A}^{S}|\Psi\rangle=|\Phi\rangle
$$

We are looking for the second quantized operator that performs the analogous transformation between wave functions in particle number representation.


The operator $\hat{A}^{S}$ acts on one of the functions $\phi_{i} \in\left\{\phi_{k}\right\}_{k=1}^{M}$ of the orthonormal set. The transformed function $\psi_{i}$ can be developed in the same basis $\left\{\phi_{k}\right\}_{k=1}^{M}$.
Let us follow step-by-step the correspondences between the first- and second-quantized picture:

$$
\begin{array}{cc}
\text { FIRST QUANTIZATION } & \text { SECOND QUANTIZATION } \\
\hat{A}^{S}\left|\phi_{i}\right\rangle=\left|\psi_{i}\right\rangle & \hat{A}^{F} \phi_{i}^{+}|\mathrm{vac}\rangle=\psi_{i}^{+}|\mathrm{vac}\rangle \\
\left|\psi_{i}\right\rangle=\sum_{k} c_{i k}\left|\phi_{k}\right\rangle & \psi_{i}^{+}=\sum_{k} c_{i k} \phi_{k}^{+} \\
\hat{A}^{S}\left|\phi_{i}\right\rangle=\sum_{k} c_{i k}\left|\phi_{k}\right\rangle & \hat{A}^{F} \phi_{i}^{+}|\mathrm{vac}\rangle=\sum_{k} c_{i k} \phi_{k}^{+}|\mathrm{vac}\rangle \\
\left\langle\phi_{\ell}\right| \hat{A}^{S}\left|\phi_{i}\right\rangle=\sum_{k} c_{i k}\left\langle\phi_{\ell} \mid \phi_{k}\right\rangle & \\
A_{\ell i}=c_{i \ell} & \Rightarrow
\end{array}
$$

Complete this expression formally by $\phi_{i}^{-}$

$$
\hat{A}^{F} \phi_{i}^{+} \phi_{i}^{-}=\sum_{k} A_{k i} \phi_{k}^{+} \phi_{i}^{-}
$$

Sum on all basis functions $\phi_{i}$

$$
\hat{A}^{F} \underbrace{\sum_{i} \phi_{i}^{+} \phi_{i}^{-}}_{\hat{N}}=\sum_{k i} A_{k i} \phi_{k}^{+} \phi_{i}^{-}
$$

The particle number operator acts as a unit operator on one-electron functions, therefore we can write

$$
\begin{equation*}
\hat{A}^{F}=\sum_{k i} A_{k i} \phi_{k}^{+} \phi_{i}^{-} \tag{204}
\end{equation*}
$$

### 11.11 One-electron operators

In the Schrödinger representation

$$
\begin{equation*}
\hat{A}^{S}=\sum_{i=1}^{N} \hat{A}(i) \tag{205}
\end{equation*}
$$

The action of this operator on a Slater determinant leads to a linear combination of Slater determinants

$$
\begin{equation*}
\hat{A}^{S}|\Phi\rangle=|\Psi\rangle=\sum_{i}^{N} \sum_{k} c_{i k}\left|\phi_{1} \ldots \phi_{k} \ldots \phi_{N}\right| \tag{206}
\end{equation*}
$$

The second-quantized counterpart of this expression is

$$
\begin{equation*}
\hat{A}^{F} \phi_{N}^{+} \ldots \phi_{i}^{+} \ldots \phi_{1}^{+}|\mathrm{vac}\rangle=\sum_{i}^{N} \sum_{k}^{M} A_{k i} \phi_{N}^{+} \ldots \phi_{k}^{+} \ldots \phi_{1}^{+}|\mathrm{vac}\rangle \tag{207}
\end{equation*}
$$

We shall prove that the above result is obtained, if we apply the previously "derived" form of the second-quantized operator, i.e.

$$
\begin{equation*}
\hat{A}^{F}=\sum_{i}^{M} \sum_{k}^{M} A_{k i} \phi_{k}^{+} \phi_{i}^{-} \tag{208}
\end{equation*}
$$

Let us study the expression

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sum_{i}^{M} \sum_{k}^{M} A_{k i} \phi_{k}^{+} \phi_{i}^{-} \phi_{N}^{+} \ldots \phi_{i}^{+} \ldots \phi_{1}^{+}|\mathrm{vac}\rangle \tag{209}
\end{equation*}
$$

the orbital $i$ should be occupied, otherwise $\phi_{i}^{-}$would give zero $\Rightarrow$ summation over $i$ is limited to $N$ instead of $M$
migrate $\phi_{i}^{+}$to the first position:

$$
\pm \phi_{i}^{+} \phi_{N}^{+} \ldots \phi_{i-1}^{+} \phi_{i+1}^{+} \ldots \phi_{1}^{+}|\mathrm{vac}\rangle
$$

using the anticommutation relation and that the spin orbital $i$ has already been moved out of the string

$$
\phi_{k}^{+} \phi_{i}^{-} \phi_{i}^{+}=\phi_{k}^{+}(1-\underbrace{\phi_{i}^{+} \phi_{i}^{-}}_{\hat{n}_{i}})=\phi_{k}^{+}
$$

migrate $\phi_{k}^{+}$back to the place of $\phi_{i}^{+}$. We need the same number of permutations, therefore we recover the possible sign change

In effect, we retrieve the expression

$$
\begin{equation*}
\hat{A}^{F} \phi_{N}^{+} \ldots \phi_{i}^{+} \ldots \phi_{1}^{+}|\mathrm{vac}\rangle=\sum_{i}^{N} \sum_{k}^{M} A_{k i} \phi_{N}^{+} \ldots \phi_{k}^{+} \ldots \phi_{1}^{+}|\mathrm{vac}\rangle \tag{210}
\end{equation*}
$$

The second-quantized operator does not depend on the number of electrons.

### 11.12 Two-electron operators

Two-electron operator in the Schrödinger picture

$$
\hat{A}^{S}=\sum_{i<j}^{N} \hat{A}(i j)
$$

e.g. electron repulsion operator

$$
\hat{V}_{e e}=\sum_{i<j}^{N} \frac{1}{r_{i j}}
$$

transforms a pair of orbitals simultaneously

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sum_{i>j} \hat{A}(i j)\left|\phi_{1} \ldots \phi_{i} \ldots \phi_{j} \ldots \phi_{N}\right| \sum_{i<j}^{N} \sum_{k \ell} c_{i j, k \ell}\left|\phi_{1} \ldots \phi_{k} \ldots \phi_{\ell} \ldots \phi_{N}\right| \tag{211}
\end{equation*}
$$

with

$$
c_{i j, k \ell}=\iint d \boldsymbol{x}_{1} d \boldsymbol{x}_{2} \phi_{k}^{*}(1) \phi_{i}(1) \frac{1}{r_{12}} \phi_{\ell}^{*}(2) \phi_{j}(2)=\langle k \ell \mid i j\rangle
$$

Following an analogous reasoning, we obtain the following expression for the second-quantized form of the electron repulsion operator

$$
\begin{equation*}
\hat{V}_{e e}^{F}=\frac{1}{2} \sum_{i j k \ell}\langle i j \mid k \ell\rangle \phi_{i}^{+} \phi_{j}^{+} \phi_{\ell}^{-} \phi_{k}^{-} \tag{212}
\end{equation*}
$$

Note the reversed order of indices $k$ and $\ell$ !

### 11.13 Reduced density matrices

The expectation value of a one-electron operator

$$
\hat{A}=\sum_{\mu \nu} A_{\mu \nu} a_{\mu}^{+} a_{\nu}
$$

is

$$
\begin{equation*}
\langle\hat{A}\rangle=\sum_{\mu \nu} A_{\mu \nu}\left\langle a_{\mu}^{+} a_{\nu}\right\rangle \tag{213}
\end{equation*}
$$

where the quantity is brackets is the one-particle reduced density matrix (1RDM)

$$
\begin{equation*}
P_{\nu \mu}=\left\langle a_{\mu}^{+} a_{\nu}\right\rangle \tag{214}
\end{equation*}
$$

The expectation value of a one-electron operator can be written as a trace

$$
\begin{equation*}
\langle\hat{A}\rangle=\sum_{\mu \nu} A_{\mu \nu} P_{\nu \mu}=\sum_{\mu}(A P)_{\mu \mu}=\operatorname{Tr}(A P) \tag{215}
\end{equation*}
$$

Analogously, the expectation value of a two-electron operator

$$
\begin{equation*}
\langle\hat{A}\rangle=\frac{1}{2} \sum_{\mu \nu \lambda \sigma} A_{\mu \nu \lambda \sigma}\left\langle a_{\mu}^{+} a_{\nu}^{+} a_{\sigma} a_{\lambda}\right\rangle \tag{216}
\end{equation*}
$$

can be written as a trace

$$
\begin{equation*}
\langle\hat{A}\rangle=\frac{1}{2} \sum_{\mu \nu \lambda \sigma} A_{\mu \nu \lambda \sigma} \Gamma_{\lambda \sigma \mu \nu} \tag{217}
\end{equation*}
$$

with the two-particle reduced density matrix, $\Gamma_{\lambda \sigma \mu \nu}$

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Gamma_{\lambda \sigma \mu \nu}=\left\langle a_{\mu}^{+} a_{\nu}^{+} a_{\sigma} a_{\lambda}\right\rangle \tag{218}
\end{equation*}
$$

The symmetry properties of $\Gamma$ are determined by Hermitian symmetry and anticommutation relations

$$
\begin{align*}
\Gamma_{\lambda \sigma \mu \nu} & =\left\langle a_{\mu}^{+} a_{\nu}^{+} a_{\sigma} a_{\lambda}\right\rangle=\left\langle a_{\lambda}^{+} a_{\sigma}^{+} a_{\nu} a_{\mu}\right\rangle=\Gamma_{\mu \nu \lambda \sigma} \\
& =-\left\langle a_{\mu}^{+} a_{\nu}^{+} a_{\lambda} a_{\sigma}\right\rangle=-\Gamma_{\sigma \lambda \mu \nu}  \tag{219}\\
& =-\left\langle a_{\nu}^{+} a_{\mu}^{+} a_{\sigma} a_{\lambda}\right\rangle=-\Gamma_{\lambda \sigma \nu \mu} \\
& =\left\langle a_{\nu}^{+} a_{\mu}^{+} a_{\lambda} a_{\sigma}\right\rangle=\Gamma_{\sigma \lambda \nu \mu}
\end{align*}
$$

The diagonal elements are zero (Pauli principle)

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Gamma_{\mu \mu \lambda \sigma}=\Gamma_{\mu \mu \lambda \lambda}=0 \tag{220}
\end{equation*}
$$

Normalization of the 2 RDM

$$
\begin{align*}
\operatorname{Tr} \Gamma & =\sum_{\mu \nu} \Gamma_{\mu \nu \mu \nu}=\sum_{\mu \nu}\left\langle\nu^{+} \mu^{+} \mu^{-} \nu^{-}\right\rangle=-\sum_{\mu \nu}\left\langle\mu^{+} \nu^{+} \mu^{-} \nu^{-}\right\rangle \\
& =-\sum_{\mu \nu}\left\langle\mu^{+}\left\{\delta_{\mu \nu}-\nu^{-} \mu^{+}\right\} \nu^{-}\right\rangle \\
& =-\sum_{\mu \nu}\left\{\delta_{\mu \nu}\left\langle\mu^{+} \nu^{-}\right\rangle-\left\langle\mu^{+} \mu^{-} \nu^{+} \nu^{-}\right\rangle\right\}  \tag{221}\\
& =-\sum_{\mu}\left\langle\hat{n}_{\mu}\right\rangle+\sum_{\mu \nu}\left\langle\hat{n}_{\mu} \hat{n}_{\nu}\right\rangle \\
& =N^{2}-N
\end{align*}
$$

The 1 RDM is derivable from the 2 RDM by contraction

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sum_{\lambda} \Gamma_{\nu \lambda \mu \lambda}=\sum_{\lambda}\left\langle\mu^{+} \lambda^{+} \lambda^{-} \nu^{-}\right\rangle=(1-N)\left\langle\mu^{+} \nu^{-}\right\rangle=(1-N) P_{\nu \mu} \tag{222}
\end{equation*}
$$

### 11.14 Hamiltonian and energy expressions

In an orthonormal basis $\left\{\phi_{\mu}\right\}_{\mu=1}^{M}$ the electronic Hamiltonian is

$$
\begin{equation*}
\hat{H}=\sum_{\mu \nu} h_{\mu \nu} a_{\mu}^{+} a_{\nu}+\frac{1}{2} \sum_{\mu \nu \lambda \sigma}\langle\mu \nu \mid \lambda \sigma\rangle a_{\mu}^{+} a_{\nu}^{+} a_{\sigma} a_{\lambda} \tag{223}
\end{equation*}
$$

The SQ Hamiltonian

- is not equal to the usual one: it is a projection on a finite ( $M$-dimensional) space of oneelectron basis functions
- is independent of the number of electrons - this dependence is shifted to the wave function

The electronic energy - expectation value of the Hamiltonian - can be calculated using the oneand two-particle RDMs

$$
\begin{equation*}
E=\langle\Psi| \hat{H}|\Psi\rangle=\sum_{\mu \nu} h_{\mu \nu} P_{\nu \mu}+\frac{1}{2} \sum_{\mu \nu \lambda \sigma}\langle\mu \nu \mid \lambda \sigma\rangle \Gamma_{\lambda \sigma \mu \nu} \tag{224}
\end{equation*}
$$

This form of the energy expression is used in current quantum chemical calculations.

An alternative energy expression is based on the reduced two-particle Hamiltonian, defined as

$$
\begin{equation*}
\hat{H}=\frac{1}{2} \sum_{\mu \nu \lambda \sigma} K_{\lambda \sigma}^{\mu \nu} a_{\mu}^{+} a_{\nu}^{+} a_{\sigma}^{-} a_{\lambda}^{-} \tag{225}
\end{equation*}
$$

where the matrix elements are

$$
\begin{equation*}
K_{\lambda \sigma}^{\mu \nu}=\frac{1}{1-N}\left(\delta_{\nu \sigma} h_{\mu \lambda}+\delta_{\mu \lambda} h_{\nu \sigma}\right)+\langle\mu \nu \mid \lambda \sigma\rangle \tag{226}
\end{equation*}
$$

and the energy can be written in terms of the 2 RDM

$$
\begin{equation*}
E=\sum_{\mu \nu \lambda \sigma} K_{\lambda \sigma}^{\mu \nu} \Gamma_{\lambda \sigma \mu \nu} \tag{227}
\end{equation*}
$$

(cf. DFT, where the energy is a functional on the one-particle density). Unconstrained variation of $\Gamma_{\lambda \sigma \mu \nu}$ leads to much too low energies, since $\Gamma$ should satisfy additional N-representability conditions.

Rosina's theorem: The ground state 2RDM completely determines the exact N-particle ground state wave function (and $p$-RDMs) without any specific information about the Hamiltonian.
Contracted Schrödinger equations are of the following structure

$$
\boldsymbol{K} \cdot{ }^{2} \boldsymbol{D}+\boldsymbol{K} \cdot{ }^{3} \boldsymbol{D}+\boldsymbol{K} \cdot{ }^{4} \boldsymbol{D}=E \cdot{ }^{2} \boldsymbol{D}
$$

### 11.15 Calculation of matrix elements

Let us consider first operator strings with vacuum:

1. we cannot annihilate on the vacuum

$$
\begin{equation*}
\langle\operatorname{vac}| a_{i}^{+} a_{k}|\operatorname{vac}\rangle=0 \tag{228}
\end{equation*}
$$

2. use the anticommutation rule and the previous result

$$
\begin{equation*}
\langle\operatorname{vac}| a_{i} a_{k}^{+}|\operatorname{vac}\rangle=\langle\operatorname{vac}|\left(\delta_{i k}-a_{k}^{+} a_{i}\right)|\operatorname{vac}\rangle=\delta_{i k} \tag{229}
\end{equation*}
$$

3. 

$$
\begin{gather*}
\langle\operatorname{vac}| a_{i} a_{j} a_{k}^{+} a_{\ell}^{+}|\mathrm{vac}\rangle=? \\
a_{i} a_{j} a_{k}^{+} a_{\ell}^{+}=a_{i}\left(\delta_{k j}-a_{k}^{+} a_{j}\right) a_{\ell}^{+}=a_{i} a_{l}^{+} \delta_{k j}-a_{i} a_{k}^{+} a_{j} a_{\ell}^{+}=  \tag{230}\\
\left(\delta_{i \ell}-a_{\ell}^{+} a_{i}\right) \delta_{k j}-\left(\delta_{i k}-a_{k}^{+} a_{i}\right)\left(\delta_{j \ell}-a_{l}^{+} a_{j}\right)=\delta_{i \ell} \delta_{k j}-\delta_{i k} \delta_{j l}+\text { zeros }
\end{gather*}
$$

A graphical evaluation rule can also be deduced

$$
\begin{equation*}
\langle\operatorname{vac}| a_{i} a_{j} a_{k}^{+} a_{\ell}^{+}|\operatorname{vac}\rangle=\delta_{i \ell} \delta_{k j}-\delta_{i k} \delta_{j l} \tag{231}
\end{equation*}
$$

### 11.16 Matrix elements between single determinants

Let us calculate

$$
\langle\mathrm{HF}| \phi_{i}^{+} \phi_{k}^{-}|\mathrm{HF}\rangle=\langle\operatorname{vac}| \phi_{1}^{-} \ldots \phi_{N}^{-} \phi_{i}^{+} \phi_{k}^{-} \phi_{N}^{+} \ldots \phi_{1}^{+}|\mathrm{vac}\rangle
$$

We proceed by steps

1. if $i, k \in /\{1, \ldots, N\}$, the matrix element is zero
2. if $i, k \in\{1, \ldots, N\}$, we order the pairs $a_{a} a_{a}^{+} \quad(a \neq i, k ; i \neq k)$ by an even number of transpositions

$$
\langle\operatorname{vac}| \phi_{i}^{-} \phi_{k}^{-} \phi_{i}^{+} \phi_{k}^{-} \phi_{i}^{+} \phi_{k}^{+} \phi_{N}^{-} \phi_{N}^{+} \ldots \phi_{1}^{-} \phi_{1}^{+}|\mathrm{vac}\rangle=\langle\operatorname{vac}| \phi_{i}^{-} \phi_{k}^{-} \phi_{i}^{+} \phi_{k}^{-} \phi_{i}^{+} \phi_{k}^{+}|\mathrm{vac}\rangle=0
$$

3. if $i, k \in\{1, \ldots, N\}$ and $i=k$, we order all pairs $a \neq i$

$$
\langle\operatorname{vac}| \phi_{i}^{-} \phi_{i}^{+} \phi_{i}^{-} \phi_{i}^{+} \phi_{N}^{-} \phi_{N}^{+} \ldots \phi_{1}^{-} \phi_{1}^{+}|\operatorname{vac}\rangle=\langle\operatorname{vac}| \phi_{i}^{-} \phi_{i}^{+} \phi_{i}^{-} \phi_{i}^{+}|\operatorname{vac}\rangle=1
$$

Taking the sum of the three cases

$$
\begin{equation*}
\langle\mathrm{HF}| \phi_{i}^{+} \phi_{k}^{-}|\mathrm{HF}\rangle=n_{i} \delta_{i k} \tag{232}
\end{equation*}
$$

### 11.17 Fermi vacuum

Evaluation of matrix elements involving single determinant (Hartree-Fock, HF) wave functions can be simplified, since the creation and annihilation operators that generate the $\langle\mathrm{HF}|$ and $|\mathrm{HF}\rangle$ states, respectively, have only a passive role.

$$
\left\langle\phi_{i}^{+} \ldots \phi_{k}^{-}\right\rangle_{\mathrm{HF}}=\underbrace{\langle\mathrm{vac}| \phi_{1}^{-} \phi_{2}^{-} \ldots \phi_{N}^{-}}_{\langle\mathrm{HF}|}\left[\phi_{i}^{+} \ldots \phi_{k}^{-}\right] \underbrace{\phi_{N}^{+} \ldots \phi_{2}^{+} \phi_{1}^{+}|\mathrm{vac}\rangle}_{|\mathrm{HF}\rangle}
$$

Therefore we define a Fermi-vacuum, which has analogous properties to the true vacuum.
VACUUM FERMI VACUUM

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
a_{i}|\mathrm{vac}\rangle=0 & \phi_{i}^{-}|\mathrm{HF}\rangle=0 \quad \text { if } & n_{i}=0 \\
\langle\mathrm{vac}| a_{i}^{+}=0 & \langle\mathrm{HF}| \phi_{i}^{+}=0 \quad \text { if } \quad n_{i}=0 \\
\langle\operatorname{vac}| a_{i}^{+} a_{k}|\mathrm{vac}\rangle=0 & \langle\mathrm{HF}| \phi_{i}^{+} \phi_{k}^{-}|\mathrm{HF}\rangle=n_{k} \delta_{i k} \\
\langle\operatorname{vac}| a_{k} a_{i}^{+}|\mathrm{vac}\rangle=\delta_{i k} & \langle\mathrm{HF}| \phi_{k}^{-} \phi_{i}^{+}|\mathrm{HF}\rangle=\left(n_{k}-1\right) \delta_{i k}
\end{array}
$$

The evaluation of matrix elements consists in simply to find all the combinations of the type

$$
\underline{a_{k} a_{i}^{+}} \quad \underline{\phi_{i}^{+} \phi_{k}^{-}}
$$

and associate to them the factor

$$
\delta_{i k} \quad n_{k} \delta_{i k}
$$

with a sign depending on the number of permutations.

### 11.18 Slater rules - an example

One-electron matrix element $\left\langle D_{a}^{r}\right| \hat{H}_{1}|D\rangle$
Using

$$
\left\langle D_{a}^{r}\right|=\langle\mathrm{HF}| a_{a}^{+} a_{r} \quad \text { and } \quad \hat{H}_{1}=\sum_{i j} h_{i j} a_{i}^{+} a_{j}
$$

the matrix element is

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left\langle D_{a}^{r}\right| \hat{H}_{1}|D\rangle=\sum_{i j} h_{i j}\langle\mathrm{HF}| a_{a}^{+} a_{r} a_{i}^{+} a_{j}|\mathrm{HF}\rangle \tag{233}
\end{equation*}
$$

Taking the possible pairings and associating them the factors

$$
a_{i}^{+} a_{k} \Rightarrow n_{k} \delta_{i k} \quad \text { and } \quad a_{i} a_{k}^{+} \Rightarrow\left(1-n_{k}\right) \delta_{i k}
$$

we have

$$
\begin{align*}
\left\langle D_{a}^{r}\right| \hat{H}_{1}|D\rangle & =\sum_{i j} h_{i j}\left\{n_{a} \delta_{a j}\left(1-n_{r}\right) \delta_{r i}+n_{r} \delta_{a r} n_{j} \delta_{i j}\right\} \\
& =\sum_{i j} h_{i j} \delta_{a j} \delta_{r i}=h_{r a} \tag{234}
\end{align*}
$$

### 11.19 Energy of a single determinant

Expectation value of the electronic Hamiltonian with the single-determinant wave function

$$
\begin{align*}
E_{\mathrm{HF}} & =\sum_{\mu \nu} h_{\mu \nu}\langle\mathrm{HF}| \chi_{\mu}^{+} \chi_{\nu}^{-}|\mathrm{HF}\rangle+\frac{1}{2} \sum_{\mu \nu \lambda \sigma}(\mu \lambda \mid \nu \sigma)\langle\mathrm{HF}| \chi_{\mu}^{+} \chi_{\nu}^{+} \chi_{\sigma}^{-} \chi_{\lambda}^{-}|\mathrm{HF}\rangle \\
& =\sum_{\mu \nu} h_{\mu \nu} P_{\nu \mu}+\frac{1}{2} \sum_{\mu \nu \lambda \sigma}(\mu \lambda \mid \nu \sigma)\left(P_{\sigma \nu} P_{\lambda \mu}-P_{\sigma \mu} P_{\lambda \nu}\right) \tag{235}
\end{align*}
$$

After permutation of the dummy indices

$$
\begin{equation*}
E_{\mathrm{HF}}=\sum_{\mu \nu} h_{\mu \nu} P_{\nu \mu}+\frac{1}{2} \sum_{\mu \nu \lambda \sigma} P_{\nu \mu} P_{\sigma \lambda}\{(\mu \nu \mid \lambda \sigma)-(\mu \lambda \mid \nu \sigma)\} \tag{236}
\end{equation*}
$$

Remembering the definition of the Fock matrix

$$
\begin{equation*}
F_{\mu \nu}=h_{\mu \nu}+\sum_{\mu \nu \lambda \sigma} P_{\sigma \lambda}\{(\mu \nu \mid \lambda \sigma)-(\mu \lambda \mid \nu \sigma)\} \tag{237}
\end{equation*}
$$

the Hartree-Fock energy can be written as a trace

$$
\begin{equation*}
E_{\mathrm{HF}}=\frac{1}{2} \operatorname{Tr}(\boldsymbol{h}+\boldsymbol{F}) \boldsymbol{P} \tag{238}
\end{equation*}
$$

## 12 Hartree-Fock theory

Explicit variation of the energy of a determinant constructed up from a set of orthogonal orbitals

- orthogonality of orbitals should be preserved during the variation process
- modify energy functional by the method of Lagrange multipliers
- mathematically problematic: the orthogonality of orbitals is anticipated in the energy expression to be varied

Apply the variation principle for an arbitrary variation of the determinant

- take the most general variation of a one-determinant wave function
- a condition is given for stationary character of the energy of a one-determinant wave function (Brillouin theorem)
- obtain the Hartree-Fock equations from the Brillouin theorem


### 12.1 Brillouin theorem

Take the expression of the variation principle

$$
\begin{equation*}
\langle\delta \Psi| \hat{H}-E|\Psi\rangle=0 \tag{239}
\end{equation*}
$$

and substitute the general variation of a one-determinant wave function

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sum_{i}^{N} \sum_{r} p_{r i}^{*}\left\langle\Psi\left(\psi_{i} \rightarrow \psi_{r}\right)\right| \hat{H}-E|\Psi\rangle=0 \tag{240}
\end{equation*}
$$

Since the $p_{r i}$ variation parameters are independent, each term should vanish individually, and since $p_{r i} \rightarrow 0$ but $p_{r i} \neq 0$, we can simplify as

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left\langle\Psi\left(\psi_{i} \rightarrow \psi_{r}\right)\right| \hat{H}|\Psi\rangle-E\left\langle\Psi\left(\psi_{i} \rightarrow \psi_{r}\right) \mid \Psi\right\rangle=0 \tag{241}
\end{equation*}
$$

The overlap of two determinants differing in one orthogonal spin orbital vanishes

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left\langle\Psi\left(\psi_{i} \rightarrow \psi_{r}\right)\right| \hat{H}|\Psi\rangle=0 \tag{242}
\end{equation*}
$$

Since this condition is trivially satisfied if the spin of $\psi_{i}$ and $\psi_{r}$ is different, we can constrain the variation to spin orbitals $\psi_{r}=\phi_{r}(\boldsymbol{r}) \eta_{r}(\sigma)$ having the same spin component as $\psi_{i}$

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left\langle\Psi\left(\phi_{i} \eta_{i} \rightarrow \phi_{r} \eta_{i}\right)\right| \hat{H}|\Psi\rangle=0 \tag{243}
\end{equation*}
$$

Brillouin theorem: Stationary one-determinant wave function does not interact with the singly excited configurations.
Equivalent to the variation principle applied to a one-determinant wave function.

### 12.2 Unrestricted Hartree-Fock equations

Consider the determinant wave function

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Psi=\operatorname{det}\left[\psi_{1}(1) \psi_{2}(2) \ldots \psi_{N}(N)\right] \tag{244}
\end{equation*}
$$

If the $\left\{\psi_{i}\right\}$ spin orbitals were not orthogonal, they can always be orthogonalized (c.f. invariance property of determinants). Apply the Brillouin theorem

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left\langle\Psi\left(\phi_{i} \eta_{i} \rightarrow \phi_{r} \eta_{i}\right)\right| \hat{H}|\Psi\rangle=0 \tag{245}
\end{equation*}
$$

Use the Slater rules

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left\langle\Psi_{i}^{r}\right| \hat{H}|\Psi\rangle=\left\langle\psi_{r}\right| \hat{h}\left|\psi_{i}\right\rangle+\sum_{\substack{j=1 \\ j \neq i}}^{N}\left\langle\psi_{r} \psi_{j} \| \psi_{i} \psi_{j}\right\rangle \tag{246}
\end{equation*}
$$

and write the expression in spatial orbitals for the case of $\eta_{i}=\eta_{r}$ we obtain

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left(\phi_{r}|\hat{h}| \phi_{i}\right)+\sum_{\substack{j=1 \\ j \neq i}}^{N}\left\{\left(\phi_{r} \phi_{i} \mid \phi_{j} \phi_{j}\right)-\left(\phi_{r} \phi_{j} \mid \phi_{j} \phi_{i}\right) \delta_{\eta_{i} \eta_{j}}\right\}=0 \tag{247}
\end{equation*}
$$

Introduce (local) the Coulomb-

$$
\begin{equation*}
\hat{J}_{j} \phi\left(\boldsymbol{r}_{1}\right)=\int d \boldsymbol{r}_{2} \frac{\phi_{j}\left(\boldsymbol{r}_{2}\right)^{*} \phi_{j}\left(\boldsymbol{r}_{2}\right)}{r_{12}} \phi\left(\boldsymbol{r}_{1}\right) \tag{248}
\end{equation*}
$$

and (nonlocal) exchange operators

$$
\begin{equation*}
\hat{K}_{j} \phi\left(\boldsymbol{r}_{1}\right)=\int d \boldsymbol{r}_{2} \frac{\phi_{j}^{*}\left(\boldsymbol{r}_{2}\right) \phi\left(\boldsymbol{r}_{2}\right)}{r_{12}} \phi_{j}\left(\boldsymbol{r}_{1}\right) \tag{249}
\end{equation*}
$$

The orbital form of the Brillouin-conditions

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left(\phi_{r}\left|\hat{h}+\sum_{\substack{j=1 \\ j \neq i}}^{N}\left\{\hat{J}_{j}-\hat{K}_{j} \delta_{\eta_{i} \eta_{j}}\right\}\right| \phi_{i}\right)=0 \tag{250}
\end{equation*}
$$

Since $\phi_{r}$ lies in the orthogonal complement of the occupied orbitals, it is sufficient to require that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left\{\hat{h}+\sum_{\substack{j=1 \\ j \neq i}}^{N}\left(\hat{J}_{j}-\hat{K}_{j} \delta_{\eta_{i} \eta_{j}}\right)\right\} \phi_{i}=\sum_{j=1}^{N} \lambda_{j i} \phi_{j} \delta_{\eta_{i} \eta_{j}} \tag{251}
\end{equation*}
$$

i.e. the function obtained after the action of the operator in curly brackets Fockian lies entirely in the space of the occupied orbitals of the same spin.
Let us apply this result to an unrestricted determinant made of $n_{a} \quad \alpha$ and $n_{b} \beta$ orbitals, $\left\{\phi_{i}^{\alpha}\right\}_{i=1}^{n_{a}}$ and $\left\{\phi_{i}^{\beta}\right\}_{i=1}^{n_{b}}$. Use the Coulomb- and exchange operators defined separately for orbitals with $\alpha$ and $\beta$ spin, to obtain the following two sets of equations

$$
\begin{align*}
& \left\{\hat{h}+\sum_{\substack{j=1 \\
j \neq i}}^{n_{a}}\left(\hat{J}_{j}^{a}-\hat{K}_{j}^{a}\right)+\sum_{j=1}^{n_{b}} \hat{J}_{j}^{b}\right\} \phi_{i}^{\alpha}=\sum_{j=1}^{n_{a}} \epsilon_{j i}^{a} \phi_{j}^{\alpha}  \tag{252}\\
& \left\{\hat{h}+\sum_{j=1}^{n_{a}} \hat{J}_{j}^{a}+\sum_{\substack{j=1 \\
j \neq i}}^{n_{b}}\left(\hat{J}_{j}^{b}-\hat{K}_{j}^{a}\right)\right\} \phi_{i}^{\beta}=\sum_{j=1}^{n_{b}} \epsilon_{j i}^{b} \phi_{j}^{\beta} \tag{253}
\end{align*}
$$

which are coupled by the Coulomb-interaction with electrons of antiparallel spin. Since $\hat{J}_{j}^{a} \phi_{j}^{\alpha}=$ $\hat{K}_{j}^{a} \phi_{j}^{\alpha}$, we can remove the summation restriction by adding the

$$
\begin{equation*}
\hat{J}_{j}^{a} \phi_{j}^{\alpha}-\hat{K}_{j}^{a} \phi_{j}^{\alpha}=0 \tag{254}
\end{equation*}
$$

self-repulsion term and define the Fock-operators, which are now identical for all orbitals in a given set $(\alpha$ or $\beta$ )

$$
\begin{equation*}
\hat{F}^{a}=\hat{h}+\sum_{j=1}^{n_{a}}\left(\hat{J}_{j}^{a}-\hat{K}_{j}^{a}\right)+\sum_{j=1}^{n_{b}} \hat{J}_{j}^{b} \quad \hat{F}^{b}=\hat{h}+\sum_{j=1}^{n_{a}} \hat{J}_{j}^{a}+\sum_{j=1}^{n_{b}}\left(\hat{J}_{j}^{b}-\hat{K}_{j}^{b}\right) \tag{255}
\end{equation*}
$$

The UHF equations are obtained in the following form

$$
\begin{equation*}
\hat{F}^{a}\left|\phi_{i}^{\alpha}\right\rangle=\sum_{j=1}^{n_{a}} \epsilon_{j i}^{a}\left|\phi_{j}^{\alpha}\right\rangle \quad \hat{F}^{b}\left|\phi_{i}^{\beta}\right\rangle=\sum_{j=1}^{n_{b}} \epsilon_{j i}^{b}\left|\phi_{j}^{\beta}\right\rangle \tag{256}
\end{equation*}
$$

It is quite impractical to solve directly these coupled integro-differential equations. Before bringing them to a more convenient form, check some properties of the Fockian.

The Fock operator does not change if constructed from a set of orbitals obtained by a unitary transformation of the orbitals of the same spin

Unitary transformation

$$
\begin{equation*}
\phi_{i}=\sum_{j}^{n_{a}} U_{j i} \phi_{j}^{\prime} \quad \phi_{i}^{\prime}=\sum_{j}^{n_{a}}\left(\boldsymbol{U}^{\dagger}\right)_{j i} \phi_{j} \tag{257}
\end{equation*}
$$

Consider, for instance, the Coulomb operator

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sum_{i}^{n_{a}} \hat{J}_{i}^{a}=\sum_{i}^{n_{a}} \int d \boldsymbol{r}_{2} \frac{\phi_{i}^{*}\left(\boldsymbol{r}_{2}\right) \phi_{i}\left(\boldsymbol{r}_{2}\right)}{r_{12}}=\sum_{i}^{n_{a}} \sum_{j, k}^{n_{a}} \int d \boldsymbol{r}_{2} \frac{U_{j i}^{*} \phi_{j}^{\prime *}\left(\boldsymbol{r}_{2}\right) U_{k i} \phi_{k}^{\prime}\left(\boldsymbol{r}_{2}\right)}{r_{12}} \tag{258}
\end{equation*}
$$

Using the unitary character of the transformation, $U_{j i}^{*}=\left(\boldsymbol{U}^{\dagger}\right)_{i j}=\left(\boldsymbol{U}^{-1}\right)_{i j}$ we obtain

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sum_{i}^{n_{a}} \sum_{j, k}^{n_{a}} U_{k i}\left(\boldsymbol{U}^{\dagger}\right)_{i j} \int d \boldsymbol{r}_{2} \frac{\phi_{j}^{\prime *}\left(\boldsymbol{r}_{2}\right) \phi_{k}^{\prime}\left(\boldsymbol{r}_{2}\right)}{r_{12}}=\sum_{j}^{n_{a}} \int d \boldsymbol{r}_{2} \frac{\phi_{j}^{* \prime}\left(\boldsymbol{r}_{2}\right) \phi_{j}^{\prime}\left(\boldsymbol{r}_{2}\right)}{r_{12}}=\sum_{j}^{n_{a}} \hat{J}_{j}^{a^{\prime}} \tag{259}
\end{equation*}
$$

The Fock operator is hermitian
Exchange operator

$$
\begin{align*}
\left\langle\phi \mid \hat{K}_{i} \psi\right\rangle & =\int d \boldsymbol{r}_{1} \phi^{*}\left(\boldsymbol{r}_{1}\right)\left[\int d \boldsymbol{r}_{2} \frac{\phi_{i}^{*}\left(\boldsymbol{r}_{2}\right) \psi\left(\boldsymbol{r}_{2}\right)}{r_{12}} \phi_{i}\left(\boldsymbol{r}_{1}\right)\right]  \tag{260}\\
& =\int d \boldsymbol{r}_{1} \int d \boldsymbol{r}_{2} \frac{\phi^{*}\left(\boldsymbol{r}_{1}\right) \phi_{i}^{*}\left(\boldsymbol{r}_{2}\right) \phi_{i}\left(\boldsymbol{r}_{1}\right) \psi\left(\boldsymbol{r}_{2}\right)}{r_{12}}=\left\langle\phi \phi_{i} \mid \phi_{i} \psi\right\rangle \\
\left\langle\hat{K}_{i} \phi \mid \psi\right\rangle & =\int d \boldsymbol{r}_{1}\left[\int d \boldsymbol{r}_{2} \frac{\phi_{i}^{*}\left(\boldsymbol{r}_{2}\right) \phi\left(\boldsymbol{r}_{2}\right)}{r_{12}} \phi_{i}\left(\boldsymbol{r}_{1}\right)\right]^{*} \psi\left(\boldsymbol{r}_{1}\right)  \tag{261}\\
& =\int d \boldsymbol{r}_{1} \int d \boldsymbol{r}_{2} \frac{\phi_{i}^{*}\left(\boldsymbol{r}_{1}\right) \phi^{*}\left(\boldsymbol{r}_{2}\right) \psi\left(\boldsymbol{r}_{1}\right) \phi_{i}\left(\boldsymbol{r}_{2}\right)}{r_{12}}=\left\langle\phi_{i} \phi \mid \psi \phi_{i}\right\rangle
\end{align*}
$$

After an interchange of the integration variables

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left\langle\phi \mid \hat{K}_{i} \psi\right\rangle=\left\langle\phi \phi_{i} \mid \phi_{i} \psi\right\rangle=\left\langle\phi_{i} \phi \mid \psi \phi_{i}\right\rangle=\left\langle\hat{K}_{i} \phi \mid \psi\right\rangle \quad \text { Q.E.D. } \tag{262}
\end{equation*}
$$

We can show analogously that the same holds for the Coulomb operator. The Fock operator, being itself the sum of hermitian operators, is hermitian too.

### 12.3 Canonical UHF equations

$\epsilon_{j i}$ are the elements of a hermitian Fock-operator matrix

$$
\begin{gather*}
\hat{F}^{a}\left|\phi_{i}^{\alpha}\right\rangle=\sum_{j}^{n_{a}} \epsilon_{j i}\left|\phi_{j}^{\alpha}\right\rangle  \tag{263}\\
\left\langle\phi_{k}^{\alpha}\right| \hat{F}^{a}\left|\phi_{i}^{\alpha}\right\rangle=\sum_{j}^{n_{a}} \epsilon_{j i} \underbrace{\left\langle\phi_{k}^{\alpha} \mid \phi_{j}^{\alpha}\right\rangle}_{\delta_{k j}}=\epsilon_{k i} \tag{264}
\end{gather*}
$$

Since $\hat{F}^{a}$ can be constructed from any set of orbitals that is obtained by a unitary transformation of the orbitals of the same spin, we can take $\boldsymbol{U}$ that diagonalizes the hermitian $\boldsymbol{\epsilon}$ matrix

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left(\boldsymbol{U}^{\dagger} \boldsymbol{\epsilon} \boldsymbol{U}\right)_{i k}=\epsilon_{i k}^{\prime}=\epsilon_{i}^{\phi^{\alpha \prime}} \delta_{i k} \tag{265}
\end{equation*}
$$

In fact, this transformation applied to the orbitals leads to a diagonal $\varepsilon$ matrix

$$
\begin{align*}
\epsilon_{i k}^{\prime} & =\left\langle\sum_{j} U_{j i} \phi_{j}^{\alpha}\right| \hat{F}^{a}\left|\sum_{\ell} U_{\ell k} \phi_{\ell}^{\alpha}\right\rangle=\sum_{j, \ell} U_{j i}^{*} \underbrace{\left\langle\phi_{j}^{\alpha}\right| \hat{F}^{a}\left|\phi_{\ell}^{\alpha}\right\rangle}_{\epsilon_{j \ell}^{a}} U_{\ell k}=  \tag{266}\\
& =\sum_{j, \ell} U_{j i}^{*} \epsilon_{j \ell}^{a} U_{\ell k}=\left(\boldsymbol{U}^{\dagger} \boldsymbol{\epsilon} \boldsymbol{U}\right)_{i k}=\epsilon_{i}^{a^{\prime}} \delta_{i k}
\end{align*}
$$

There exists a set of spin orbitals for which the Fockian is diagonal. Using this basis set the canonical unrestricted Hartree-Fock equations are obtained

$$
\begin{align*}
\hat{F}^{a} \phi_{i}^{\alpha} & =\epsilon_{i}^{a} \phi_{i}^{\alpha} & & i=1,2, \ldots, \infty  \tag{267}\\
\hat{F}^{b} \phi_{i}^{\beta} & =\epsilon_{i}^{b} \phi_{i}^{\beta} & & i=1,2, \ldots, \infty
\end{align*}
$$

that are coupled pseudo-eigenvalue equations. The first $n_{a}$ and $n_{b}$ solutions are the occupied orbitals while the remaining solutions are the virtual orbitals.

- Although the eigenfunctions of the HF-equations have no physical meaning (the wave function is invariant to their unitary transformation) the eigenvalues (orbitals energies) can be approximately related to the ionization potentials (Koopmans theorem).
- An infinite number of equivalent orbital sets can be obtained by unitary transformations of the canonical orbitals. Chosen according to some well-defined criteria, these unitary transformations may lead to orbitals with specific properties, i.e. the localized orbitals, closer to our feeling about chemical bonding.


### 12.4 Unrestricted Hartree-Fock energy expression

Let us apply the general result for the expectation value of the Hamiltonian for a single determinant built from $N=n_{a}+n_{b}$ spin orbitals

$$
\begin{equation*}
E=\sum_{i}^{n_{a}+n_{b}}\langle i| \hat{h}|i\rangle+\frac{1}{2} \sum_{i}^{n_{a}+n_{b}} \sum_{j}^{n_{a}+n_{b}}\langle i j \| i j\rangle \tag{268}
\end{equation*}
$$

Separate sums over orbitals of spin $\alpha$ and $\operatorname{spin} \beta$ and write integrals in terms of space orbitals

$$
\begin{align*}
E & =\sum_{i}^{n_{a}}(i|\hat{h}| i)+\frac{1}{2} \sum_{i}^{n_{a}}\left\{\sum_{j}^{n_{a}+n_{b}}(i i \mid j j)-\sum_{j}^{n_{a}}(i j \mid i j)\right\}+ \\
& +\sum_{i}^{n_{b}}\langle i| \hat{h}|i\rangle+\frac{1}{2} \sum_{i}^{n_{b}}\left\{\sum_{j}^{n_{a}+n_{b}}(i i \mid j j)-\sum_{j}^{n_{b}}(i j \mid i j)\right\} \tag{269}
\end{align*}
$$

Use the notations

$$
\begin{array}{ll}
h_{i i}^{\alpha \alpha}=\left(i^{\alpha}|\hat{h}| i^{\alpha}\right) & J_{i j}^{\alpha \alpha}=\left(i^{\alpha} i^{\alpha} \mid j^{\alpha} j^{\alpha}\right) \\
J_{i j}^{\alpha \beta}=\left(i^{\alpha} i^{\alpha} \mid j^{\beta} j^{\beta}\right) & K_{i j}^{\alpha \alpha}=\left(i^{\alpha} j^{\alpha} \mid i^{\alpha} j^{\alpha}\right) \tag{270}
\end{array}
$$

and the energy expression can also be written as

$$
\begin{align*}
E & =\sum_{i}^{n_{a}} h_{i i}^{\alpha \alpha}+\frac{1}{2} \sum_{i}^{n_{a}} \sum_{j}^{n_{a}}\left\{J_{i j}^{\alpha \alpha}-K_{i j}^{\alpha \alpha}\right\}+\frac{1}{2} \sum_{i}^{n_{a}} \sum_{j}^{n_{b}} J_{i j}^{\alpha \beta}+ \\
& +\sum_{i}^{n_{b}} h_{i i}^{\beta \beta}+\frac{1}{2} \sum_{i}^{n_{b}} \sum_{j}^{n_{b}}\left\{J_{i j}^{\beta \beta}-K_{i j}^{\beta \beta}\right\}+\frac{1}{2} \sum_{i}^{n_{b}} \sum_{j}^{n_{a}} J_{i j}^{\beta \alpha} \tag{271}
\end{align*}
$$

Orbital energies are the diagonal matrix elements of the $\alpha$ - and $\beta$-spin Fock operators in a canonical molecular orbital basis, e.g.

$$
\begin{align*}
\epsilon_{i}^{\alpha} & =\left(\phi_{i}^{\alpha}\left|\hat{F}^{\alpha}\right| \phi_{i}^{\alpha}\right)=\left(i^{\alpha}\left|\hat{h}+\sum_{j}^{n_{a}}\left(\hat{J}_{j}^{a}-\hat{K}_{j}^{a}\right)+\sum_{j}^{n_{b}} \hat{J}^{b}\right| i^{\alpha}\right)  \tag{272}\\
& =h_{i i}^{\alpha \alpha}+\sum_{j}^{n_{a}}\left\{J_{i j}^{\alpha \alpha}-K_{i j}^{\alpha \alpha}\right\}+\sum_{j}^{n_{b}} J_{i j}^{\alpha \beta}
\end{align*}
$$

The sum of orbital energies

$$
\begin{align*}
\sum_{i}^{n_{a}+n_{b}} \epsilon_{i} & =\sum_{i}^{n_{a}} h_{i i}^{\alpha \alpha}+\sum_{i}^{n_{a}} \sum_{j}^{n_{a}}\left\{J_{i j}^{\alpha \alpha}-K_{i j}^{\alpha \alpha}\right\}+\sum_{i}^{n_{a}} \sum_{j}^{n_{b}} J_{i j}^{\alpha \beta}  \tag{273}\\
& +\sum_{i}^{n_{b}} h_{i i}^{\beta \beta}+\sum_{i}^{n_{b}} \sum_{j}^{n_{b}}\left\{J_{i j}^{\beta \beta}-K_{i j}^{\beta \beta}\right\}+\sum_{i}^{n_{b}} \sum_{j}^{n_{a}} J_{i j}^{\beta \alpha} \neq E
\end{align*}
$$

is not equal to the total energy, due to the double counting of electron-electron interactions.

### 12.5 Spin properties of the UHF wave function

Eigenfunction of the $\hat{S}_{z}$ operator

$$
\begin{equation*}
\hat{S}_{z}|D\rangle=\frac{1}{2}\left(n^{\alpha}-n^{\beta}\right)|D\rangle \tag{274}
\end{equation*}
$$

but not eigenfunction of the $\hat{S}^{2}=\hat{S}_{-} \hat{S}_{+}+\hat{S}_{z}+\hat{S}_{z}^{2}$ operator!
For example, a two-electron DODS (different orbitals different spin) system $|D\rangle=\left|\hat{\mathcal{A}}\left[\phi^{\alpha} \bar{\phi}^{\beta}\right]\right\rangle$

$$
\hat{S}^{2}|D\rangle=\hat{\mathcal{A}}\left[\hat{S}_{-} \hat{S}_{+} \phi^{\alpha} \bar{\phi}^{\beta}+\hat{S}_{z} \phi^{\alpha} \bar{\phi}^{\beta}+\hat{S}_{z}^{2} \phi^{\alpha} \bar{\phi}^{\beta}\right]
$$

where we use that $\left[\hat{S}^{2}, \hat{\mathcal{A}}\right]=0$.
Last two terms are zero, since $\left(n^{\alpha}-n^{\beta}\right)=0$.

$$
\begin{equation*}
\hat{S}_{-} \hat{S}_{+}\left\{\phi^{\alpha} \bar{\phi}^{\beta}\right\}=\hat{S}_{-}\left\{\phi^{\alpha} \phi^{\beta}\right\}=\bar{\phi}^{\alpha} \phi^{\beta}+\phi^{\alpha} \bar{\phi}^{\beta} \tag{275}
\end{equation*}
$$

The two-electron UHF wave function is not eigenfunction of the $\hat{S}^{2}$ operator

$$
\begin{equation*}
\hat{S}^{2}|D\rangle=|D\rangle+\hat{\mathcal{A}}\left[\bar{\phi}^{\alpha} \phi^{\beta}\right] \neq(S(S+1)|D\rangle \tag{276}
\end{equation*}
$$

Expectation value of $\hat{S}^{2}$ is

$$
\begin{align*}
\langle D| \hat{S}^{2}|D\rangle & =\langle D \mid D\rangle+\left\langle\hat{\mathcal{A}} \phi^{\alpha} \bar{\phi}^{\beta} \mid \hat{\mathcal{A}} \bar{\phi}^{\alpha} \phi^{\beta}\right\rangle \\
& =1+\left|\begin{array}{ll}
\left\langle\phi^{\alpha} \mid \bar{\phi}^{\alpha}\right\rangle & \left\langle\bar{\phi}^{\alpha} \mid \bar{\phi}^{\beta}\right\rangle \\
\left\langle\phi^{\alpha} \mid \phi^{\beta}\right\rangle & \left\langle\bar{\phi}^{\alpha} \mid \phi^{\alpha}\right\rangle
\end{array}\right|=1-\left|S^{\alpha \beta}\right|^{2} \tag{277}
\end{align*}
$$

### 12.6 Symmetry dilemma

While the exact solutions of the molecular Schrödinger equation are eigenfunctions of all the operators that commute with the molecular Hamiltonian, this is not necessarily the case for an approximate (e.g. UHF) solution. This can be the case for the symmetry operation of the molecular point group and it is the case for the $\hat{S}^{2}$ operator, which has the expectation value for a UHF wave function:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left\langle\hat{S}^{2}\right\rangle_{\mathrm{UHF}}=\underbrace{\left(\frac{n^{\alpha}-n^{\beta}}{2}\right)\left(\frac{n^{\alpha}-n^{\beta}}{2}+1\right)}_{\left\langle\hat{S}^{2}\right\rangle_{\text {exact }}}+n^{\beta}-\sum_{i} \sum_{j}\left|S_{i j}^{\alpha \beta}\right|^{2} \tag{278}
\end{equation*}
$$

If we require that the solutions have the correct symmetry, it appears as a constraint (restriction) in the variation problem, and leads necessarily to a higher energy than the solution of the unconstrained (unrestricted) problem. We should decide whether we give up the symmetry requirements to get a better energy or we restrict the solutions on physical grounds and obtain a worse energy. This is the Löwdin symmetry dilemma.

### 12.7 Restricted Hartree-Fock equations

A determinant built up from pairs of spin orbitals composed of the same space orbital multiplied by either $\alpha(\sigma)$ or $\beta(\sigma)$ is a restricted determinant. The case of closed shells, i.e. $N=2 n$ is particularly important

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Psi=\mathcal{A}\left\{\phi_{1}(1) \bar{\phi}_{1}(2) \phi_{2}(3) \bar{\phi}_{2}(4) \ldots \phi_{n}(2 n-1) \bar{\phi}_{n}(2 n)\right\} \tag{279}
\end{equation*}
$$

Instead of repeating the derivation from the Brillouin theorem, we can simply consider this problem as a special case of the UHF equations with $n_{a}=n_{b}=n$ and $\hat{J}_{i}^{a}=\hat{J}_{i}^{b}=\hat{J}_{i}$, etc. We obtain

$$
\begin{equation*}
\hat{F}=\hat{h}+\sum_{j=1}^{n} 2 \hat{J}_{j}-\hat{K}_{j} \tag{280}
\end{equation*}
$$

where the summation is over the $n$ space orbitals. The canonical molecular orbitals are obtained as eigenfunctions of the canonical RHF equations

$$
\begin{equation*}
\hat{F}\left|\phi_{i}\right\rangle=\epsilon_{i}\left|\phi_{i}\right\rangle \quad i=1,2, \ldots, \infty \tag{281}
\end{equation*}
$$

with orbital energies as eigenvalues.

### 12.8 RHF energy expression

Closed shell RHF electronic energy in terms of $n$ space orbitals

$$
\begin{equation*}
E=2 \sum_{i}^{n}(i|\hat{h}| i)+\sum_{i}^{n} \sum_{j}^{n} 2(i i \mid j j)-(i j \mid j i)=2 \sum_{i}^{n} h_{i i}+\sum_{i}^{n} \sum_{j}^{n} 2 J_{i j}-K_{i j} \tag{282}
\end{equation*}
$$

Orbital energies are the diagonal elements (and eigenvalues) of the RHF Fock operator and using integrals in space orbitals in the chemists' (charge density) convention

$$
\begin{equation*}
\epsilon_{i}=h_{i i}+\sum_{j}^{n} 2 J_{i j}-K_{i j}=(i|\hat{h}| i)+\sum_{j}^{n} 2(i i \mid j j)-(i j \mid j i) \tag{283}
\end{equation*}
$$

The sum of the energies of the $n$ doubly occupied orbitals

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sum_{i}^{2 n} \varepsilon_{i}=2 \sum_{i}^{n} h_{i i}+2 \sum_{j}^{n} 2 J_{i j}-K_{i j} \neq E \tag{284}
\end{equation*}
$$

is not equal to the total energy.

### 12.9 Orbital energies

$$
\begin{gather*}
\left\langle\psi_{i}\right| \hat{F}\left|\psi_{j}\right\rangle=\varepsilon_{j}\left\langle\psi_{i} \mid \psi_{j}\right\rangle=\varepsilon_{j} \delta_{i j}  \tag{285}\\
\varepsilon_{i}=\langle i| \hat{h}|i\rangle+\sum_{b}^{N}\langle i b \| i b\rangle \tag{286}
\end{gather*}
$$

- Occupied orbitals

$$
\begin{equation*}
\varepsilon_{a}=\langle a| \hat{h}|a\rangle+\sum_{\substack{b=1 \\ b \neq a}}^{N}\langle a b \| a b\rangle \tag{287}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\langle a a||a a\rangle=0$ is used. The energy of an occupied orbital corresponds to a particle moving in a $N-1$-electron potential.

- Virtual orbitals

$$
\begin{equation*}
\varepsilon_{r}=\langle r| \hat{h}|r\rangle+\sum_{b=1}^{N}\langle r b \| r b\rangle \tag{288}
\end{equation*}
$$

describe electrons in the potential of all the $N$ electrons of the Hartree-Fock ground state.

### 12.10 Koopmans theorem

Let us group together those terms of the electronic energy, which depend on a given molecular orbital, e.g. $k$

$$
\begin{equation*}
E_{N}=\sum_{i \neq k}^{N}\langle i| \hat{h}|i\rangle+\langle k| \hat{h}|k\rangle+\frac{1}{2} \sum_{i \neq k}^{N} \sum_{j \neq k}^{N}\langle i j \| i j\rangle+\sum_{i \neq k}^{N}\langle i k \| i k\rangle+\frac{1}{2}\langle k k \| k k\rangle \tag{289}
\end{equation*}
$$

Since the self-interaction $\langle k k \| k k\rangle=0$, the last term is 0 and we can drop the summation restriction

$$
\begin{equation*}
E_{N}=\sum_{i \neq k}^{N}\langle i| \hat{h}|i\rangle+\frac{1}{2} \sum_{i \neq k}^{N} \sum_{j \neq k}^{N}\langle i j \| i j\rangle+\langle k| \hat{h}|k\rangle+\sum_{i}^{N}\langle i k \| i k\rangle=E_{N-1}(k)+\epsilon_{k} \tag{290}
\end{equation*}
$$

The negative of the orbital energy is equal to the energy difference of $(N-1)$-electron and the $N$-electron determinants, the ionization potential,

$$
\begin{equation*}
I P=E_{N-1}(k)-E_{N}=-\epsilon_{k} \tag{291}
\end{equation*}
$$

provided we neglect the orbital relaxation effects (spin orbitals are supposed to be frozen in the ( $N-1$ )-electron determinant.
Similarly, we can examine the energy of an $(N+1)$-electron determinant, obtained by adding a virtual spin orbital $\psi_{r}$ to the $N$-electron determinant.

$$
\begin{equation*}
E_{N+1}=E_{N}+\langle r| \hat{h}|r\rangle+\sum_{i}^{N}\langle r i \| r i\rangle=E_{N}+\epsilon_{r} \tag{292}
\end{equation*}
$$

The electron affinity, EA, can be approximated as the negative of the virtual orbital energy:

$$
\begin{equation*}
E A=E_{N}-E_{N+1}(r)=-\epsilon_{r} \tag{293}
\end{equation*}
$$

Koopmans theorem: Provided that the spin-orbitals satisfy the canonical HF equations, and the same set of orbitals are used to describe the neutral system and its ions, their energy difference is stationary against spin-orbital variations.

### 12.11 Excitation operators - Generalities

Define an excitation operator by

$$
\begin{equation*}
\hat{O}_{n}^{\dagger}|0\rangle=|n\rangle \tag{294}
\end{equation*}
$$

In bra-ket representation

$$
\begin{equation*}
\hat{O}_{n}^{\dagger}=|n\rangle\langle 0| \tag{295}
\end{equation*}
$$

Th corresponding de-excitation operator

$$
\begin{equation*}
\hat{O}_{n}=|0\rangle\langle n| \tag{296}
\end{equation*}
$$

Apply the commutator $\left[\hat{H}, \hat{O}_{n}^{\dagger}\right]$ to the exact ground state wave function

$$
\begin{align*}
{\left[\hat{H}, \hat{O}_{n}^{\dagger}\right]|0\rangle } & =\hat{H} \hat{O}_{n}^{\dagger}|0\rangle-\hat{O}_{n}^{\dagger} \hat{H}|0\rangle=\hat{H}|n\rangle-E_{0} \hat{O}_{n}^{\dagger}|0\rangle \\
& =E_{n} \hat{O}_{n}^{\dagger}|0\rangle-E_{0} \hat{O}_{n}^{\dagger}|0\rangle=\Delta E_{0 n} \hat{O}_{n}^{\dagger}|0\rangle \tag{297}
\end{align*}
$$

This leads to the (super)operator equation

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left[\hat{H}, \hat{O}_{n}^{\dagger}\right]=\Delta E_{0 n} \hat{O}_{n}^{\dagger} \tag{298}
\end{equation*}
$$

Excitation energy as Rayleigh quotient

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Delta E_{0 n}=\frac{\langle 0| \hat{O}_{n}\left[\hat{H}, \hat{O}_{n}^{\dagger}\right]|0\rangle}{\langle 0| \hat{O}_{n} \hat{O}_{n}^{\dagger}|0\rangle} \tag{299}
\end{equation*}
$$

These are the basic relations of the EOM (equation of motion) approach.

### 12.12 Generalized Koopmans theorem

An ionization process can be described by the operator

$$
\begin{equation*}
\hat{O}_{n}^{\dagger}=\sum_{r} c_{r}^{*} a_{r}=\hat{O}^{+} \tag{300}
\end{equation*}
$$

which creates a positive ion by removing one electron. The ionization potential, $\Delta E^{+}$is

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Delta E^{+}=\frac{\sum_{r s} c_{r}^{*} c_{s}\langle 0| a_{s}^{+}\left[\hat{H}, a_{r}\right]|0\rangle}{\sum_{r s} c_{r}^{*} c_{s}\langle 0| a_{s}^{+} a_{r}|0\rangle}=\frac{\boldsymbol{c}^{\dagger} \boldsymbol{K} \boldsymbol{c}}{\boldsymbol{c}^{\dagger} \boldsymbol{P} \boldsymbol{c}} \tag{301}
\end{equation*}
$$

In the denominator we recognize the density matrix elements, and in the numerator we have the matrix elements of the Koopmans operator

$$
\begin{equation*}
K_{r s}=\langle 0| a_{s}^{+}\left[\hat{H}, a_{r}\right]|0\rangle \tag{302}
\end{equation*}
$$

After expansion of the SQ Hamiltonian operator

$$
\begin{align*}
K_{r s} & =\left\langle\sum_{t u} h_{t u}\left(s^{+} t^{+} u^{-} r^{-}-s^{+} r^{-} t^{+} u^{-}\right)\right. \\
& \left.+\frac{1}{2} \sum_{t u v w}\langle t u \mid v w\rangle\left(s^{+} t^{+} u^{+} w^{-} v^{-} r^{-}-s^{+} r^{-} t^{+} u^{+} w^{-} v^{-}\right)\right\rangle \tag{303}
\end{align*}
$$

Applying the anticommutation relations we obtain the 1RDM operator

$$
\begin{equation*}
s^{+} t^{+} u^{-} r^{-}-s^{+} r^{-} t^{+} u^{-}=s^{+} t^{+} u^{-} r^{-} \quad-s^{+}\left(\delta_{r t}-t^{+} r^{-}\right) u^{-} \quad=-\delta_{r t} s^{+} u^{-} \tag{304}
\end{equation*}
$$

and the 2 RDM operator

$$
\begin{align*}
& s^{+} t^{+} u^{+} w^{-} v^{-} r^{-}-s^{+} r^{-} t^{+} u^{+} w^{-} v^{-}= \\
& s^{+} t^{+} u^{+} w^{-} v^{-} r^{-}-s^{+}\left(\delta_{r t}-t^{+} r^{-}\right) u^{+} w^{-} v^{-}= \\
& s^{+} t^{+} u^{+} w^{-} v^{-} r^{-}-\delta_{r t} s^{+} u^{+} w^{-} v^{-}+s^{+} t^{+}\left(\delta_{r u}-u^{+} r^{-}\right) w^{-} v^{-}=  \tag{305}\\
& -\delta_{r t} s^{+} u^{+} w^{-} v^{-}-\delta_{r u} s^{+} t^{+} w^{-} v^{-}=-\delta_{r t} s^{+} u^{+} w^{-} v^{-}+\delta_{r u} s^{+} t^{+} w^{-} v^{-} \\
K_{r s}= & -\left\langle\sum_{t u} h_{t u} \delta_{r t} s^{+} u^{-}+\frac{1}{2} \sum_{t u v w}\langle t u \mid v w\rangle\left(\delta_{r t} s^{+} u^{+} w^{-} v^{-}-\delta_{r u} s^{+} t^{+} w^{-} v^{-}\right)\right\rangle \\
= & -\left\langle\sum_{u} h_{r u} s^{+} u^{-}+\frac{1}{2}\left(\sum_{u v w}\langle r u \mid v w\rangle s^{+} u^{+} w^{-} v^{-}-\sum_{t v w}\langle t r \mid v w\rangle s^{+} t^{+} w^{-} v^{-}\right)\right\rangle  \tag{306}\\
= & -\left[\sum_{t} h_{r t} P_{t s}+\sum_{t u v}\langle r t \mid u v\rangle \Gamma_{u v, s t}\right]
\end{align*}
$$

The condition for a stationary value of $\Delta E^{+}$is

$$
\begin{equation*}
\delta \Delta E^{+}=\frac{\delta \boldsymbol{c}^{\dagger} \boldsymbol{K} \boldsymbol{c}}{\boldsymbol{c}^{\dagger} \boldsymbol{P} \boldsymbol{c}}-\left(\frac{\boldsymbol{c}^{\dagger} \boldsymbol{K} \boldsymbol{c}}{\boldsymbol{c}^{\dagger} \boldsymbol{P} \boldsymbol{c}}\right) \frac{\delta \boldsymbol{c}^{\dagger} \boldsymbol{P} \boldsymbol{c}}{\boldsymbol{c}^{\dagger} \boldsymbol{P} \boldsymbol{c}}+\text { c.c. }=0 \tag{307}
\end{equation*}
$$

leading to the matrix equation

$$
\begin{equation*}
\boldsymbol{K} \boldsymbol{c}=\Delta E^{+} \boldsymbol{P} \boldsymbol{c} \tag{308}
\end{equation*}
$$

For a HF wave function $\boldsymbol{P}=\boldsymbol{I}$ and the Koopmans matrix is

$$
\begin{equation*}
K_{r s}=-\left[\sum_{t} h_{r t} \delta_{t s}+\sum_{t u v}\langle r t \mid u v\rangle n_{u} n_{v}\left(\delta_{t u} \delta_{r v}-\delta_{t v} \delta_{r u}\right)\right]=-F_{r s} \tag{309}
\end{equation*}
$$

equal to the matrix of the Fock operator, which has as eigenvalues the orbital energies. It can be concluded that for a HF wave function the variational ionization potential is just the orbital energy $\Delta E^{+}=-\varepsilon_{i}$ and the corresponding excitation operator is $a_{i}$, which removes an occupied spin orbital from the HF determinant.

### 12.13 How good is the Koopmans theorem?

- orbital relaxation correction - lowers the energy of the ions
- correlation energy correction - depends on the number of electrons


Two errors compensate each other for the ionization potential, enhance each other for the electron affinity.

### 12.14 Excited states

Excite an electron from the $i$-th occupied to the $r$-th virtual level of a RHF wave function. Two possible excited determinants

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Psi_{i}^{r} \quad \Psi_{\bar{i}}^{\bar{r}} \tag{310}
\end{equation*}
$$

Their linear combinations form pure singlet and triplet states

$$
\begin{align*}
{ }^{1} \Psi & =\frac{1}{2}\left(\Psi_{i}^{r}+\Psi^{\bar{r}}\right)  \tag{311}\\
{ }^{3} \Psi & =\frac{1}{2}\left(\Psi_{i}^{r}-\Psi_{\bar{i}}^{\bar{i}}\right) \tag{312}
\end{align*}
$$

The excitation energies $\Delta E_{S, T}$ in this single transition approximation, (STA) depend on the orbital energies and the electron-electron interactions.

$$
\begin{equation*}
E_{\mathrm{S}, \mathrm{~T}}=\frac{1}{2}\left(\left\langle\Psi_{i}^{r}\right| \hat{H}\left|\Psi_{i}^{r}\right\rangle+\left\langle\Psi_{\bar{i}}^{\bar{r}}\right| \hat{H}\left|\Psi_{\bar{i}}^{\bar{r}}\right\rangle \pm\left\langle\Psi^{\overline{\tilde{r}}}\right| \hat{H}\left|\Psi_{i}^{r}\right\rangle \pm\left\langle\Psi_{i}^{r}\right| \hat{H}\left|\Psi_{\bar{i}}^{\bar{r}}\right\rangle\right) \tag{313}
\end{equation*}
$$

The first two matrix elements are equal (just $\alpha$ and $\beta$ are interchanged) and the last two are complex conjugates, which are also equal for real wave functions.

The energy of the excited determinant is obtained from the ground state energy by removing $\varepsilon_{i}$ and replacing it by $\varepsilon_{r}$ and correcting for the missing $\mathrm{e}^{-}$-repulsion term between electrons of parallel spin

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left\langle\Psi_{i}^{r}\right| \hat{H}\left|\Psi_{i}^{r}\right\rangle=E_{0}+\varepsilon_{r}-\varepsilon_{i}-\left\langle\phi_{r}\right| \hat{J}_{i}-\hat{K}_{i}\left|\phi_{r}\right\rangle \tag{314}
\end{equation*}
$$

Transition matrix element between determinants that differ in two spin orbitals

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left\langle\Psi_{i}^{r}\right| \hat{H}\left|\Psi \Psi_{\bar{i}}^{\bar{r}}\right\rangle & =\left\langle\phi_{1} \bar{\phi}_{1} \ldots \phi_{r} \bar{\phi}_{i} \ldots\right| \hat{H}\left|\phi_{1} \bar{\phi}_{1} \ldots \phi_{i} \bar{\phi}_{r} \ldots\right\rangle \\
& =\langle r \bar{i}||i \bar{r}\rangle=[r i \bar{i} \mid \bar{r}]-[r \bar{i} \mid \bar{r} i]=(r i \mid i r)-0=K_{i r}
\end{aligned}
$$

Summarizing these results

$$
\begin{equation*}
E_{\mathrm{S}, \mathrm{~T}}=\frac{1}{2}\left\{2\left(E_{0}+\varepsilon_{r}-\varepsilon_{i}-J_{i r}+K_{i r}\right) \pm 2 K_{i r}\right\} \tag{315}
\end{equation*}
$$

Excitation energies

$$
\begin{align*}
\Delta E_{\mathrm{S}} & =\varepsilon_{r}-\varepsilon_{i}-J_{i r}+2 K_{i r}  \tag{316}\\
\Delta E_{\mathrm{T}} & =\varepsilon_{r}-\varepsilon_{i}-J_{i r} \tag{317}
\end{align*}
$$

Relative magnitude of singlet/triplet splittings can sometimes be estimated from the shape of the occupied and virtual orbitals, as the self-energy of the transition density $\phi_{i}^{*}(\boldsymbol{r}) \phi_{r}(\boldsymbol{r})$.

## 13 EOM for excited states

Let us use the equation of motion method for electronic excited states. Define the singlet excitation operator

$$
\begin{equation*}
\hat{O}_{n}^{\dagger}=\frac{1}{2} \sum_{a r} X_{a r}^{*}\left(a_{r \alpha}^{+} a_{a \alpha}^{-}+a_{r \beta}^{+} a_{a \beta}^{-}\right)=\sum_{a r} X_{a r}^{*} \hat{E}_{a r}^{\dagger} \tag{318}
\end{equation*}
$$

and its adjoint

$$
\begin{equation*}
\hat{O}_{n}=\frac{1}{2} \sum_{a r} X_{a r}\left(a_{a \alpha}^{+} a_{r \alpha}^{-}+a_{a \beta}^{+} a_{r \beta}^{-}\right)=\sum_{a r} X_{a r} \hat{E}_{a r} \tag{319}
\end{equation*}
$$

The excitation energy can be obtained from

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Delta E_{n}=\frac{\langle 0| \hat{O}_{n}\left[\hat{H}, \hat{O}_{n}^{\dagger}\right]|0\rangle}{\left.\langle 0| \hat{O}_{n} \hat{O}_{n}^{\dagger}\right]|0\rangle} \tag{320}
\end{equation*}
$$

Substitution of the excitation operators

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Delta E_{n}=\frac{\sum_{a r} \sum_{b s} X_{a r}^{*} X_{b s}\langle 0| \hat{E}_{b s}\left[\hat{H}, \hat{E}_{a r}^{\dagger}\right]|0\rangle}{\sum_{a r} \sum_{b s} X_{a r}^{*} X_{b s}\langle 0| \hat{E}_{b s} \hat{E}_{a r}^{\dagger}|0\rangle} \tag{321}
\end{equation*}
$$

The matrix elements in the denominator

$$
\begin{equation*}
\langle 0| \hat{E}_{b s} \hat{E}_{a r}^{\dagger}|0\rangle=\frac{1}{4}\left(\langle 0| a_{b \alpha}^{+} a_{a \alpha}+a_{b \beta}^{+} a_{a \beta}|0\rangle \delta_{r s}=\frac{1}{2} \rho_{a b}\right. \tag{322}
\end{equation*}
$$

is the half of the spinless one-particle reduced density matrix. Define $\boldsymbol{Q}$ as

$$
\begin{equation*}
Q_{b s, a r}=2\langle 0| \hat{E}_{b s}\left[\hat{H}, \hat{E}_{a r}^{\dagger}\right]|0\rangle \tag{323}
\end{equation*}
$$

and the excitation energy expression in matrix form

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Delta E_{n}=\frac{\boldsymbol{X}^{\dagger} \boldsymbol{Q} \boldsymbol{X}}{\boldsymbol{X}^{\dagger} \boldsymbol{\rho} \boldsymbol{X}} \tag{324}
\end{equation*}
$$

The stationary condition leads to the matrix equation

$$
\begin{equation*}
\boldsymbol{Q} \boldsymbol{X}=\Delta E \rho \boldsymbol{X} \tag{325}
\end{equation*}
$$

In the special case of a one-determinant HF wave function as ground state $\boldsymbol{\rho}=\boldsymbol{I}$ and

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left.Q_{b s, a r}=2\left(\left.\left\langle{ }^{1} D_{b}^{s}\right| \hat{H}\right|^{1} D_{a}^{r}\right\rangle-\delta_{a b} \delta_{s r}\langle D| \hat{H}|D\rangle\right) \tag{326}
\end{equation*}
$$

The $\boldsymbol{Q}$ matrix is the single-CI matrix (TDA - Tamm-Dancoff approximation). The diagonal elements are the STA excitation energies that we have already derived previously

$$
\begin{equation*}
Q_{a r, a r}=\varepsilon_{a}-\varepsilon_{b}-(a a \mid r r)+2(a r \mid a r) \tag{327}
\end{equation*}
$$

while the off-diagonal elements are

$$
\begin{equation*}
Q_{b s, a r}=-(a b \mid s r)+2(a r \mid b s) \tag{328}
\end{equation*}
$$

The use of TDA is mandatory when the STA gives qualitatively wrong results. For instance, the benzene excited states

- 4 possible single excitations between doubly degenerate HOMO to doubly degenerate LUMO
- four-fold degenerate i.r. with 4 identical STA excitation energies
- TDA leads to the correct symmetry-adapted combinations and splitting of the excitation energies

TDA is often used with semi-empirical model Hamiltonians (PPP, CNDO/S) and sometimes also with ab initio (e.g. Gaussian program).

### 13.1 Hartree-Fock density matrix

The operator of the one-particle reduced density matrix in SQ is

$$
\begin{equation*}
\hat{\rho}\left(\boldsymbol{x}_{1} ; \boldsymbol{x}_{1}^{\prime}\right)=\sum_{k \ell} \psi_{\ell}\left(\boldsymbol{x}_{1}\right) \psi_{k}^{*}\left(\boldsymbol{x}_{1}^{\prime}\right) k^{+} \ell^{-} \tag{329}
\end{equation*}
$$

Since the 1RDM can be expanded as

$$
\begin{equation*}
\rho\left(\boldsymbol{x}_{1} ; \boldsymbol{x}_{1}^{\prime}\right)=\sum_{k \ell} \psi_{\ell}^{*}\left(\boldsymbol{x}_{1}\right) P_{\ell k} \psi_{k}\left(\boldsymbol{x}_{1}^{\prime}\right) \tag{330}
\end{equation*}
$$

the matrix elements $P_{\ell k}=\left\langle k^{+} \ell^{-}\right\rangle$form a discrete representation of the 1RDM.
In the case of a single determinant HF wave function the 1RDM on the basis the MOs

$$
\begin{equation*}
P_{k i}=\langle\mathrm{HF}| \psi_{i}^{+} \psi_{k}^{-}|\mathrm{HF}\rangle=n_{k} \delta_{i k} \tag{331}
\end{equation*}
$$

is diagonal. The trace of $P_{k i}$ is equal to $N=\sum_{i}^{M} n_{i}$, the number of electrons.
The density matrix of a HF wave function is idempotent. This property follows simply from the fact that $n_{i}=0$ or $n_{i}=1$, therefore

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left(\boldsymbol{P}^{2}\right)_{k \ell}=\sum_{i} P_{k i} P_{i l}=\sum_{i} n_{k} \delta_{i k} \cdot n_{i} \delta_{\ell i}=n_{i}^{2} \delta_{k \ell}=P_{k \ell} \tag{332}
\end{equation*}
$$

The idempotency of the one-particle reduced density matrix is a necessary and sufficient condition for the one-determinant character of the wave function.

### 13.2 Natural orbitals

For multi-configurational (e.g. CI) wave functions the 1RDM is not necessarily diagonal. Nevertheless, since $\boldsymbol{P}$ is hermitian, one can find a unitary matrix $\boldsymbol{U}$ that $\boldsymbol{U}^{\dagger} \boldsymbol{P} \boldsymbol{U}$ be diagonal. Let $\boldsymbol{U}$ such a matrix. Then the transformation from the original (MO) and the new basis is

$$
\begin{equation*}
\eta_{i}=\sum_{k} \psi_{k} U_{k i} \quad \psi_{k}=\sum_{i} \eta_{i}\left(\boldsymbol{U}^{\dagger}\right)_{i k}=\sum_{i} \eta_{i} U_{k i}^{*} \tag{333}
\end{equation*}
$$

Substituting this transformation to the expansion of the 1 RDM

$$
\begin{equation*}
\hat{\rho}\left(\boldsymbol{x}_{1} ; \boldsymbol{x}_{1}^{\prime}\right)=\sum_{k \ell} \sum_{i j} U_{\ell i}^{*} \eta_{i}\left(\boldsymbol{x}_{1}\right) P_{\ell k} U_{k j} \eta_{j}^{*}\left(\boldsymbol{x}_{1}^{\prime}\right) \tag{334}
\end{equation*}
$$

Since $\boldsymbol{U}$ has been chosen such that $\boldsymbol{U}^{\dagger} \boldsymbol{P} \boldsymbol{U}_{i j}=\lambda_{i} \delta_{i j}$

$$
\begin{equation*}
\hat{\rho}\left(\boldsymbol{x}_{1} ; \boldsymbol{x}_{1}^{\prime}\right)=\sum_{i} \lambda_{i} \eta_{i}\left(\boldsymbol{x}_{1}\right) \eta_{i}^{*}\left(\boldsymbol{x}_{1}^{\prime}\right) \tag{335}
\end{equation*}
$$

The orbitals, that diagonalize the 1RDM are called natural orbitals. Let us write the wave function as a linear combination of determinants built from the natural orbitals. In this case the diagonal elements of the density matrix

$$
\begin{align*}
P_{i i}=\lambda_{i} & =\sum_{K} \sum_{L} c_{K}^{*} c_{L}\left\langle D_{K}\right| \eta_{i}^{+} \eta_{i}^{-}\left|D_{L}\right\rangle \\
& =\sum_{K} \sum_{L} c_{K}^{*} c_{L} n_{i}^{L}\left\langle D_{K} \mid D_{L}\right\rangle=\sum_{K}\left|c_{K}\right|^{2} n_{i}^{K} \tag{336}
\end{align*}
$$

are $n_{i}^{K}$ is the occupation number of the $i$-th NO in determinant $K$. The diagonal elements, $\lambda_{i}$, can be any number between 0 and 1 . The matrix representation of the 1 RDM for a multi-configurational wave function is not idempotent.

### 13.3 Two-particle density matrix for a HF wave function

The matrix representation of the two-particle reduced density matrix is obtained from the following expectation value

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Gamma_{l k, i j}^{\mathrm{HF}}=\langle\mathrm{HF}| \psi_{i}^{+} \psi_{j}^{+} \psi_{k}^{-} \psi_{l}^{-}|\mathrm{HF}\rangle=n_{i} n_{j}\left(\delta_{j k} \delta_{i l}-\delta_{j l} \delta_{i k}\right) \tag{337}
\end{equation*}
$$

in the basis of molecular orbitals.
The two-particle density matrix of a one-determinant wave function can be expressed by the elements of the 1 RDM matrix elements as

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Gamma_{l k, i j}^{\mathrm{HF}}=P_{l i} P_{j k}-P_{l j} P_{k i} \tag{338}
\end{equation*}
$$

The first part corresponds to the Coulomb-component

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Gamma_{l k, i j}^{\mathrm{HF}, \mathrm{Coul}}\left(\boldsymbol{x}_{1}, \boldsymbol{x}_{2} ; \boldsymbol{x}_{1}, \boldsymbol{x}_{2}^{\prime}\right)=P\left(\boldsymbol{x}_{1}, \boldsymbol{x}_{1}^{\prime}\right) P\left(\boldsymbol{x}_{2}, \boldsymbol{x}_{2}^{\prime}\right) \tag{339}
\end{equation*}
$$

and the second part first part is the exchange-component

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Gamma_{l k, i j}^{\mathrm{HF}, \mathrm{exch}}\left(\boldsymbol{x}_{1}, \boldsymbol{x}_{2} ; \boldsymbol{x}_{1}^{\prime}, \boldsymbol{x}_{2}^{\prime}\right)=-P\left(\boldsymbol{x}_{1}, \boldsymbol{x}_{2}^{\prime}\right) P\left(\boldsymbol{x}_{2}, \boldsymbol{x}_{1}^{\prime}\right) \tag{340}
\end{equation*}
$$

## 14 Hartree-Fock-Hall-Roothan equations

The UHF and RHF equations can be brought to a more practical form, by writing the molecular orbitals as linear combination of some fixed functions. In quantum chemistry, these are usually some approximations to atomic orbitals (AO). In this LCAO approximation

$$
\begin{equation*}
\phi_{i}=\sum_{\mu=1}^{m} c_{\mu i} \chi_{\mu} \tag{341}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $c_{\mu i}=\left(\boldsymbol{c}_{i}\right)_{\mu}$ is an element of the column vector of the expansion coefficients. We suppose that the $m$ basis functions (AOs) are linearly independent and in general, form a non-orthogonal set. The $c_{\mu i}$ MO-coefficients are not true linear variation parameters, since the HF equations are only pseudo-eigenvalue equations.
We can proceed again from the Brillouin condition

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left\langle\Psi\left(\phi_{i} \rightarrow \phi_{i}^{\prime}\right)\right| \hat{H}|\Psi\rangle=0 \tag{342}
\end{equation*}
$$

and we suppose that both $\phi_{i}$ and $\phi_{i}^{\prime}$ can be expanded in the same AO basis

$$
\begin{equation*}
\phi_{i}=\sum_{\mu=1}^{m} c_{\mu i} \chi_{\mu} \quad \phi_{i}^{\prime}=\sum_{\mu=1}^{m} q_{\mu} \chi_{\mu} \tag{343}
\end{equation*}
$$

Introduce the projection operator to the subspace of occupied orbitals

$$
\begin{equation*}
\hat{P}=\sum_{j=1}^{o c c}\left|\phi_{j}\right\rangle\left\langle\phi_{j}\right| \tag{344}
\end{equation*}
$$

Any function $\hat{P}|\psi\rangle=\hat{P}\left|\sum_{\nu} p_{\nu} \chi_{\nu}\right\rangle$ lies in the occupied subspace and any function $(1-\hat{P})|\psi\rangle=$ $(1-\hat{P})\left|\sum_{\nu} p_{\nu} \chi_{\nu}\right\rangle$ is orthogonal to this subspace. Since the $p_{\nu}$ coefficients are arbitrary, we should require the fulfillment of the Brillouin theorem for all functions of the form $\left|\phi^{\prime}\right\rangle=(1-\hat{P})\left|\chi_{\nu}\right\rangle$. Using the Slater rules

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left\langle\phi^{\prime}\right| \hat{F}\left|\phi_{i}\right\rangle=0 \tag{345}
\end{equation*}
$$

and substituting the definition $\left\langle\phi^{\prime}\right|$

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left\langle\chi_{\nu}\right|(1-\hat{P}) \hat{F}\left|\phi_{i}\right\rangle=\left\langle\chi_{\nu}\right| \hat{F}\left|\phi_{i}\right\rangle-\left\langle\chi_{\nu} \mid \sum_{j=1}^{o c c} \phi_{j}\right\rangle \underbrace{\left\langle\phi_{j}\right| \hat{F}\left|\phi_{i}\right\rangle}_{\varepsilon_{j i}}=0 \tag{346}
\end{equation*}
$$

Putting the LCAO expansion of $\left|\phi_{i}\right\rangle$ and $\left|\phi_{j}\right\rangle$

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left\langle\chi_{\nu}\right| \hat{F}\left|\sum_{\mu=1}^{m} c_{\mu i} \chi_{\mu}\right\rangle=\sum_{j=1}^{o c c}\left\langle\chi_{\nu} \mid \sum_{\mu=1}^{m} c_{\mu i} \chi_{\mu}\right\rangle \varepsilon_{j i} \tag{347}
\end{equation*}
$$

Supposing that we have already performed the unitary transformation that diagonalizes the $\varepsilon$ matrix, and using obvious matrix element notations

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sum_{\mu=1}^{m} F_{\nu \mu} c_{\mu i}=\varepsilon_{i} \sum_{\mu=1}^{m} S_{\nu \mu} c_{\mu i} \tag{348}
\end{equation*}
$$

The result is a generalized pseudo-eigenvalue equation

$$
\begin{equation*}
\boldsymbol{F} \boldsymbol{c}_{i}=\varepsilon_{i} \boldsymbol{S} \boldsymbol{c}_{i} \quad i=1,2, \ldots, m \tag{349}
\end{equation*}
$$

which can be written in matrix form by constructing the $m \times m \mathrm{MO}$ coefficient matrix, $\boldsymbol{C}$, from the column vectors of the expansion coefficients

$$
\begin{equation*}
F C=\varepsilon S C \tag{350}
\end{equation*}
$$

Solutions
$N$ (in closed shell RHF case $N / 2$ ) occupied orbitals
$m-N$ virtual orbitals

The Hartree-Fock-Roothaan equations are not equivalent with the Hartree-Fock equations. By increasing the basis set we can only approach the "Hartree-Fock limit".

### 14.1 P-matrix

In the LCAO-theory we use frequently the projector to the subspace of occupied orbitals, expressed by the LCAO coefficients

$$
\begin{equation*}
\hat{P}=\sum_{i=1}^{o c c}\left|\phi_{i}\right\rangle\left\langle\phi_{i}\right|=\sum_{\mu \nu}^{m} \sum_{j=1}^{o c c} c_{i \mu} c_{i \nu}^{*}\left|\chi_{\mu}\right\rangle\left\langle\chi_{\nu}\right|=\sum_{\mu \nu}^{m} P_{\mu \nu}\left|\chi_{\mu}\right\rangle\left\langle\chi_{\nu}\right| \tag{351}
\end{equation*}
$$

In components, and also in matrix notation using the column vector of the LCAO coefficients, $\boldsymbol{c}_{i}$

$$
\begin{equation*}
P_{\mu \nu}=\sum_{i=1}^{o c c} c_{i \mu} c_{i \nu}^{*} \quad \boldsymbol{P}=\sum_{i=1}^{o c c} \boldsymbol{c}_{i} \boldsymbol{c}_{i}^{\dagger} \tag{352}
\end{equation*}
$$

In the RHF case it is used multiplied with a factor of 2

$$
\boldsymbol{D}=2 \boldsymbol{P}
$$

The P-matrix is often called density matrix. The electronic density has the expression

$$
\begin{equation*}
\varrho(\boldsymbol{r})=\sum_{i}^{o c c} \phi_{i}(\boldsymbol{r}) \phi_{i}^{*}(\boldsymbol{r})=\sum_{\mu}^{m} \sum_{\nu}^{m} P_{\mu \nu} \chi_{\nu}^{*}(\boldsymbol{r}) \chi_{\mu}(\boldsymbol{r}) \tag{353}
\end{equation*}
$$

The P-matrix appears in the expectation values of one-electron operators.
The operator $\hat{P}$ is a projector, i.e. $\hat{P}^{2}=\hat{P}$. The idempotency of its matrix representation in the MO basis and in any orthonormal basis is a criterion for the one-determinant character of the underlying wave function.
However, this property does not hold for its matrices in a non-orthogonal basis, like the AO basis

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left\langle\chi_{\mu}\right| \hat{P}\left|\chi_{\nu}\right\rangle=\sum_{i}^{o c c}\left\langle\chi_{\mu} \mid \phi_{i}\right\rangle\left\langle\phi_{i} \mid \chi_{\nu}\right\rangle=\sum_{i}^{o c c}(\boldsymbol{S P S})_{\mu \nu} \tag{354}
\end{equation*}
$$

which is obviously not idempotent.
Let us calculate that component of an arbitrary orbital $\psi=\sum_{\tau} d_{\tau} \chi_{\tau}$ which lies in the occupied subspace. Using the $\hat{P}$ projection operator

$$
\begin{equation*}
\hat{P}|\psi\rangle=\sum_{i=1}^{o c c}\left|\phi_{i}\right\rangle\left\langle\phi_{i} \mid \psi\right\rangle=\sum_{\mu}^{m} p_{\mu}\left|\chi_{\mu}\right\rangle \tag{355}
\end{equation*}
$$

Using the LCAO expansions of $\hat{P}$ and $\psi$

$$
\hat{P}|\psi\rangle=\sum_{\mu \nu} \sum_{\tau} P_{\mu \nu} d_{\tau}\left|\chi_{\mu}\right\rangle\left\langle\chi_{\nu} \mid \chi_{\tau}\right\rangle=\sum_{\mu \nu} \sum_{\tau} P_{\mu \nu} S_{\nu \tau} d_{\tau}\left|\chi_{\mu}\right\rangle=\sum_{\mu \nu}(\boldsymbol{P S})_{\mu \tau} d_{\tau}\left|\chi_{\mu}\right\rangle
$$

The matrix of the projection, $\boldsymbol{P S}$ can be deduced from

$$
\begin{equation*}
p_{\mu}=\sum_{\nu}(\boldsymbol{P} \boldsymbol{S})_{\mu \nu} d_{\nu} \tag{356}
\end{equation*}
$$

The $\boldsymbol{P S}$ matrix is idempotent. To see that, consider the expression of the overlap of two molecular orbitals

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left\langle\phi_{i} \mid \phi_{j}\right\rangle=\sum_{\mu} \sum_{\nu} c_{\mu i}^{*} c_{\nu j}\left\langle\chi_{\mu} \mid \chi_{\nu}\right\rangle=\delta_{i j} \tag{357}
\end{equation*}
$$

in matrix notation

$$
\begin{equation*}
\boldsymbol{c}_{i}^{\dagger} \boldsymbol{S} \boldsymbol{c}_{j}=\delta_{i j} \tag{358}
\end{equation*}
$$

to calculate the square of the $\boldsymbol{P S}$ matrix

$$
\begin{equation*}
\boldsymbol{P S P} \boldsymbol{S}=\sum_{i}^{o c c} \sum_{j}^{o c c} \boldsymbol{c}_{i} \boldsymbol{c}_{i}^{\dagger} \boldsymbol{S} \boldsymbol{c}_{j} \boldsymbol{c}_{j}^{\dagger} \boldsymbol{S}=\sum_{i}^{o c c} \sum_{j}^{o c c} \boldsymbol{c}_{i} \delta_{i j} \boldsymbol{c}_{j}^{\dagger} \boldsymbol{S}=\sum_{i}^{o c c} \boldsymbol{c}_{i} \boldsymbol{c}_{i}^{\dagger} \boldsymbol{S}=\boldsymbol{P} \boldsymbol{S} \tag{359}
\end{equation*}
$$

The trace of the $\boldsymbol{P} \boldsymbol{S}$ matrix is equal to the number of electrons.

$$
\begin{equation*}
N=\int d \boldsymbol{r} \varrho(\boldsymbol{r})=\sum_{\mu} \sum_{\nu} P_{\mu \nu} \int d \boldsymbol{r} \chi_{\nu}^{*}(\boldsymbol{r}) \chi_{\mu}(\boldsymbol{r})=\sum_{\mu} \sum_{\nu} P_{\mu \nu} S_{\nu \mu}=\sum_{\mu}(\boldsymbol{P} \boldsymbol{S})_{\mu \mu} \tag{360}
\end{equation*}
$$

The $\boldsymbol{P} \boldsymbol{S}$ matrix can be considered as the correct representation of the one-particle reduced density matrix (1RDM).

### 14.2 Population analysis

Total number of electrons (AO basis)

$$
\begin{equation*}
N=\sum_{\mu} \sum_{\nu} P_{\mu \nu} S_{\nu \mu}=\sum_{\mu}(\boldsymbol{P S})_{\mu \mu} \tag{361}
\end{equation*}
$$

Each term can be interpreted as the number of electrons associated to the orbital $\chi_{\mu}$. Since the AO-s are assigned to atoms, we can group together the net charge (electronic + nuclear) associated with an atom $A$

$$
\begin{equation*}
Q^{A}(\text { Mulliken })=Z_{A}-\sum_{\mu \in A}(\boldsymbol{P S})_{\mu \mu} \tag{362}
\end{equation*}
$$

This is the Mulliken population analysis. It corresponds to the halving of the electron density associated with a pair of AOs.
This definition of the atomic charge is not unique. Since $\operatorname{Tr} \boldsymbol{A} \boldsymbol{B}=\operatorname{Tr} \boldsymbol{B} \boldsymbol{A}$

$$
\begin{equation*}
N=\sum_{\mu}\left(\boldsymbol{S}^{\alpha} \boldsymbol{P} \boldsymbol{S}^{1-\alpha}\right)_{\mu \mu} \tag{363}
\end{equation*}
$$

with a value of $\alpha \leq 1$. In particular

$$
\begin{equation*}
Q^{A}(\text { Löwdin })=Z_{A}-\sum_{\mu \in A}\left(\boldsymbol{S}^{1 / 2} \boldsymbol{P} \boldsymbol{S}^{1 / 2}\right)_{\mu \mu} \tag{364}
\end{equation*}
$$

This is the Löwdin-population analysis.

### 14.3 Potential-fitted charges

The electrostatic properties (multipole moments, electrostatic potential, etc.) cannot be described by Mulliken (or Löwdin) charges correctly. Take the molecular dipole moment.

$$
\begin{align*}
\boldsymbol{\mu} & =\sum_{A} Z_{A} \boldsymbol{R}^{A}-\sum_{A} \sum_{\mu \in A} \sum_{\nu} P_{\mu \nu}\left\langle\chi_{\mu}\right| \hat{\boldsymbol{r}}\left|\chi_{\nu}\right\rangle \\
& =\sum_{A} Z_{A} \boldsymbol{R}^{A}-\sum_{A} \sum_{\mu \in A} \sum_{\nu} P_{\mu \nu}\left\langle\chi_{\mu}\right| \boldsymbol{R}^{A}+\hat{\boldsymbol{r}}^{A}\left|\chi_{\nu}\right\rangle \\
& =\sum_{A} Z_{A} \boldsymbol{R}^{A}-\sum_{A} \sum_{\mu \in A} \sum_{\nu} P_{\mu \nu} S_{\mu \nu} \boldsymbol{R}^{A}-\sum_{A} \sum_{\mu \in A} \sum_{\nu} P_{\mu \nu}\left\langle\chi_{\mu}\right| \hat{\boldsymbol{r}}^{A}\left|\chi_{\nu}\right\rangle  \tag{365}\\
& =\sum_{A} Q^{A} \boldsymbol{R}^{A}-\sum_{A} \boldsymbol{\mu}^{A}=\boldsymbol{\mu}(\text { Mulliken })+\sum_{A} \boldsymbol{\mu}_{A}
\end{align*}
$$

If the molecular multipoles (dipole, etc.) are wrong, asymptotic behaviour of the electrostatic potential calculated from them

$$
\begin{equation*}
V\left(\boldsymbol{r}_{k}\right)=\sum_{A} \frac{Q^{A}}{\left|\boldsymbol{r}_{k}-\boldsymbol{R}_{A}\right|} \tag{366}
\end{equation*}
$$

is also incorrect.
Approximately correct electrostatics can be obtained from fitted charges. Take the expression of the potential on a grid of points

$$
\begin{equation*}
V\left(\boldsymbol{r}_{k}\right)=\sum_{a} \frac{q^{a}}{\left|\boldsymbol{r}_{k}-\boldsymbol{R}_{a}\right|}=\sum_{a}^{N_{a}} T^{k a} q^{a} \quad k=1, \ldots, N_{\text {grid }} \tag{367}
\end{equation*}
$$

and look for the best set of charges that reproduce the quantum chemically calculated electrostatic potential in the same points,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\nu_{k}=\sum_{A} \frac{Z^{A}}{\left|\boldsymbol{r}_{k}-\boldsymbol{R}_{A}\right|}-\sum_{\mu \nu} P_{\mu \nu}\left\langle\chi_{\mu}\right| \frac{1}{\left|\boldsymbol{r}_{k}-\boldsymbol{r}\right|}\left|\chi_{\nu}\right\rangle \tag{368}
\end{equation*}
$$

This leads to an overdetermined system of equations $\left(N_{\text {grid }} \gg N_{a}\right)$

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathcal{V}_{k}=\sum_{a}^{N_{a}} T^{k a} q^{a} \tag{369}
\end{equation*}
$$

In matrix form, the formal solution (in the least squares sense)

$$
\begin{align*}
& \boldsymbol{v}=\boldsymbol{T} \boldsymbol{q} \\
& \boldsymbol{q}=\left(\boldsymbol{T}^{\dagger} \boldsymbol{T}\right)^{-1} \boldsymbol{v} \tag{370}
\end{align*}
$$

Depend to some extent on the choice of sampling grid.

### 14.4 Covalent bond orders

Correlation of fluctuation of the number of electrons associated to two atoms

$$
\begin{equation*}
B_{A B}=-2\left(\left\langle N_{A} N_{B}\right\rangle-\left\langle N_{A}\right\rangle\left\langle N_{B}\right\rangle\right) \tag{371}
\end{equation*}
$$

is considered as a measure of the covalent bond order between two atoms.

It can be shown that it is related to the change of correlation content during bond formation in the diatomic fragment. The deviation of the pair density from the simple product of one-particle densities is the correlation function, $f\left(\boldsymbol{r}_{1}, \boldsymbol{r}_{2}\right)$

$$
\begin{equation*}
\gamma\left(\boldsymbol{r}_{1}, \boldsymbol{r}_{2}\right)=\frac{1}{2} \varrho\left(\boldsymbol{r}_{1}\right) \varrho\left(\boldsymbol{r}_{2}\right)\left[1+f\left(\boldsymbol{r}_{1}, \boldsymbol{r}_{2}\right)\right] \tag{372}
\end{equation*}
$$

Integrated on a given region (e.g. atomic region), it gives the total correlation content

$$
\begin{equation*}
F\left(\Omega_{A}, \Omega_{A}\right)=\int_{\Omega_{A}} d \boldsymbol{r}_{1} \int_{\Omega_{A}} d \boldsymbol{r}_{2} \varrho\left(\boldsymbol{r}_{1}\right) \varrho\left(\boldsymbol{r}_{2}\right) f\left(\boldsymbol{r}_{1}, \boldsymbol{r}_{2}\right) \tag{373}
\end{equation*}
$$

The correlation content is dominated by the exchange correlation component, therefore the bond order is often related to directly with the exchange part of the above quantity

$$
\begin{equation*}
B_{A B}=2 \int_{\Omega_{A}} d \mathbf{r}_{1} \int_{\Omega_{B}} d \mathbf{r}_{2}\left[\varrho_{\alpha}\left(\mathbf{r}_{2} ; \mathbf{r}_{1}\right) \varrho_{\alpha}\left(\mathbf{r}_{1} ; \mathbf{r}_{2}\right)+\varrho_{\beta}\left(\mathbf{r}_{2} ; \mathbf{r}_{1}\right) \varrho_{\beta}\left(\mathbf{r}_{1} ; \mathbf{r}_{2}\right)\right] \tag{374}
\end{equation*}
$$

Using Mulliken's definition of the atomic population, we get the following bond order definition

$$
\begin{equation*}
B_{A B}=\sum_{\mu \nu}\left(\boldsymbol{P}^{\alpha} \boldsymbol{S}\right)_{\mu \nu}\left(\boldsymbol{P}^{\alpha} \boldsymbol{S}\right)_{\nu \mu}+\left(\boldsymbol{P}^{\beta} \boldsymbol{S}\right)_{\mu \nu}\left(\boldsymbol{P}^{\beta} \boldsymbol{S}\right)_{\nu \mu} \tag{375}
\end{equation*}
$$

Gives 1 for single, 2 for double and 3 for triple bonds.

### 14.5 Implementation of the HFR equations: SCF procedure

We suppose that a reasonable initial guess of the P-matrix, $\boldsymbol{P}^{(0)}$, is available. For a closed shell system

- Calculate the one-electron integrals to form the core-Hamiltonian matrix

$$
\begin{equation*}
H_{\mu \nu}^{\text {core }}=T_{\mu \nu}+V_{\mu \nu}^{n u c l} \tag{376}
\end{equation*}
$$

- Calculate the list of two-electron integrals

$$
\begin{equation*}
(\mu \nu \mid \lambda \sigma)=\int d \boldsymbol{r}_{1} \int d \boldsymbol{r}_{2} \chi_{\mu}^{*}(1) \chi_{\nu}(1) r_{12}^{-1} \chi_{\lambda}^{*}(2) \chi_{\sigma}(2) \tag{377}
\end{equation*}
$$

There are $O\left(K^{4} / 8\right)$ unique integrals, therefore this step constitutes the major part of the computational effort.

- Form the Fock matrix of the $n$-th iteration

$$
\begin{equation*}
F_{\mu \nu}^{(n)}=H_{\mu \nu}^{c o r e}+\sum_{\lambda \sigma} P_{\lambda \sigma}^{(n-1)}[2(\mu \nu \mid \lambda \sigma)-(\mu \lambda \mid \sigma \nu)]=H_{\mu \nu}^{c o r e}+G_{\mu \nu}\left(\boldsymbol{P}^{(n-1)}\right) \tag{378}
\end{equation*}
$$

- Solve the matrix equation

$$
\begin{equation*}
F C=S C \varepsilon \tag{379}
\end{equation*}
$$

- Introduce the canonical orthogonalization (avoiding problems with linearly dependent basis sets) by the following equations

$$
\begin{equation*}
\boldsymbol{U}^{\dagger} \boldsymbol{S} \boldsymbol{U}=\boldsymbol{s} \quad \boldsymbol{X}=\boldsymbol{U} \boldsymbol{s}^{-1 / 2} \tag{380}
\end{equation*}
$$

- Transform the Roothaan equations directly by substituting $\boldsymbol{C}=\boldsymbol{X} \boldsymbol{C}^{\prime}$

$$
\begin{align*}
\boldsymbol{F} \boldsymbol{X} \boldsymbol{C}^{\prime} & =\boldsymbol{S} \boldsymbol{X} \boldsymbol{C}^{\prime} \varepsilon \\
\left(\boldsymbol{X}^{\dagger} \boldsymbol{F} \boldsymbol{X}\right) \boldsymbol{C}^{\prime} & =\left(\boldsymbol{X}^{\dagger} \boldsymbol{S} \boldsymbol{X}\right) \boldsymbol{C}^{\prime} \varepsilon \tag{381}
\end{align*}
$$

- Diagonalize $\boldsymbol{F}^{\prime}=\left(\boldsymbol{X}^{\dagger} \boldsymbol{F} \boldsymbol{X}\right)$ to get $\boldsymbol{C}^{\prime}$ and $\boldsymbol{\varepsilon}$
- Transform back the coefficient matrix to the original basis

$$
\begin{equation*}
C=X C^{\prime} \tag{382}
\end{equation*}
$$

- Form a new P-matrix

$$
\begin{equation*}
\boldsymbol{P}^{n+1}=\boldsymbol{C C}^{\dagger} \tag{383}
\end{equation*}
$$

- Check convergence by comparing $\boldsymbol{P}^{(n)}$ and $\boldsymbol{P}^{(n+1)}$; if necessary start a new cycle


### 14.6 Direct SCF procedure

After a few SCF cycles, most of the P-matrix elements do not change appreciably. Consider the Fockian update formula

$$
\begin{equation*}
\boldsymbol{F}^{(n)}=\boldsymbol{H}+\boldsymbol{G}\left(\boldsymbol{P}^{(n-1)}\right) \tag{384}
\end{equation*}
$$

The density matrix of the $(n-1)$ th iteration is $\boldsymbol{P}^{(n-1)}=\boldsymbol{P}^{(n-2)}+\Delta \boldsymbol{P}^{(n-1)}$. Since

$$
\begin{equation*}
\boldsymbol{F}^{(n-1)}=\boldsymbol{H}+\boldsymbol{G}\left(\boldsymbol{P}^{(n-2)}\right) \tag{385}
\end{equation*}
$$

the update formula can be written also as

$$
\begin{equation*}
\boldsymbol{F}^{(n)}=\boldsymbol{F}^{(n-1)}+\boldsymbol{G}\left(\Delta \boldsymbol{P}^{(n-1)}\right) \tag{386}
\end{equation*}
$$

The matrix of two-electron update matrix

$$
\begin{equation*}
\boldsymbol{G}\left(\Delta \boldsymbol{P}^{(n-1)}\right)_{\mu \nu}=\sum_{\lambda \sigma} \Delta P_{\lambda \sigma}^{(n-1)}[2(\mu \mu \mid \lambda \sigma)-(\mu \lambda \mid \sigma \nu)] \tag{387}
\end{equation*}
$$

is sparse and we need only those two-electron integrals, which are multiplied by $\left|\Delta \boldsymbol{P}_{\mu \nu}^{(n-1)}\right|>\epsilon$. These integrals can be calculated directly, at each iteration, thus reducing huge data storage and disk access overheads.

### 14.7 Basis sets

- Slater type orbitals (STO) or exponential orbitals (ETO)

$$
\begin{equation*}
\chi_{n \ell m}^{S T O}\left(\boldsymbol{r}_{a}\right)=N r_{a}^{n-1} e^{-\zeta r_{a}} \cdot Y_{\ell}^{m}\left(\theta_{a}, \phi_{a}\right) \tag{388}
\end{equation*}
$$

- correct $R \rightarrow 0$ and $R \rightarrow \infty$ behaviour
- atomic HF orbitals are linear combinations of a few STOs
- a molecular basis set may contain one, two (double $\zeta$ ), three (triple $\zeta$ ), four (quadruple $\zeta$ ), etc. sets of STOs per atom
- Electron repulsion integrals (ERI) are difficult to calculate for more than two centers
- Gaussian type orbitals (GTO)

$$
\begin{align*}
& g_{u v w}\left(\boldsymbol{r}_{a}\right)=N x^{u} y^{v} z^{w} \cdot e^{-\alpha r_{a}^{2}} \quad(\text { Cartesian }) \\
& g_{n \ell m}\left(\boldsymbol{r}_{a}\right)=N e^{-\alpha r_{a}^{2}} r^{n-1} \cdot Y_{\ell}^{m}\left(\theta_{a}, \phi_{a}\right) \quad \text { (spherical) } \tag{389}
\end{align*}
$$

- incorrect behaviour at $R \rightarrow 0$ (no cusp) and at $R \rightarrow \infty$ (too fast decay)
- much more (5-10 times) GTOs are needed to describe an atomic HF orbital
- basis functions are fixed combination of primitive Gaussians: contracted Gaussian functions
- easy calculation of ERIs for three and four centers too (product theorem)


### 14.8 Product theorem for Gaussian functions

The ERIs involve the product of two primitive Gaussian functions

$$
\begin{equation*}
\exp \left(-\alpha r_{a}^{2}\right) \exp \left(-\beta r_{b}^{2}\right)=\prod_{i=x, y, z} \exp \left(-\alpha\left(r_{i}-A_{i}\right)^{2}-\beta\left(r_{i}-B_{i}\right)^{2}\right) \tag{390}
\end{equation*}
$$

We can transform the exponent, e.g. for the component $x$

$$
\begin{align*}
-\alpha\left(x-A_{x}\right)^{2}-\beta\left(x-B_{x}\right)^{2} & =-\alpha\left(x^{2}-2 A_{x} x+A_{x}^{2}\right)-\beta\left(x^{2}-2 B_{x} x+B_{x}^{2}\right) \\
& =-(\alpha+\beta)\left(x^{2}-2 x \frac{\alpha A_{x}+\beta B_{x}}{\alpha+\beta}+\frac{\alpha A_{x}^{2}+\beta B_{x}^{2}}{\alpha+\beta}\right)  \tag{391}\\
& =-(\alpha+\beta)\left[\left(x-\frac{\alpha A_{x}+\beta B_{x}}{\alpha+\beta}\right)^{2}-\frac{\alpha \beta}{\alpha+\beta}\left(A_{x}-B_{x}\right)^{2}\right]
\end{align*}
$$

leading to a new Gaussian function

$$
\begin{equation*}
\exp \left(-\frac{\alpha \beta}{\alpha+\beta}\left(A_{x}-B_{x}\right)^{2}\right) \cdot \exp \left(-(\alpha+\beta)\left(x-X_{A B}\right)^{2}\right) \tag{392}
\end{equation*}
$$

with $(\alpha+\beta)$ exponent and

$$
\begin{equation*}
X_{A B}=\frac{\alpha A_{x}+\beta B_{x}}{\alpha+\beta} \tag{393}
\end{equation*}
$$

center. It means that even four-center integrals can be handled as easily as two-center ones.

### 14.9 Contracted Gaussian functions

Reduce the number of variational parameters in the HFR equations by taking fixed linear combination of primitive functions

$$
\begin{equation*}
\chi_{\mu}^{C G F}\left(\boldsymbol{r}-\boldsymbol{R}_{A}\right)=\sum_{p=1}^{L} d_{p \mu} g_{p}\left(\alpha_{p \mu}, \boldsymbol{r}-\boldsymbol{R}_{A}\right) \tag{394}
\end{equation*}
$$

- STO-nG basis sets
obtained as least square fits to STO basis function with $\zeta=1.0$
- generalized contraction

MOs from atomic GTO calculations

- ANO basis
atomic natural orbitals from correlated atomic calculations
- split-valence basis sets
minimal contracted basis for core orbitals, more flexibility for valence shell: valence double zeta (VDZ), valence triple zeta (VTZ)
- polarization functions
have higher angular quantum number than the highest occupied atomic orbital
- diffuse functions
to describe excited states, negative ions


### 14.10 Second Quantized Hamiltonian in AO basis

In non-orthogonal basis, like the AO basis, creation and annihilation operators follow the anticommutation relation

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left[\chi_{\nu}^{+}, \chi_{\mu}^{-}\right]_{+}=S_{\mu \nu} \tag{395}
\end{equation*}
$$

and the operators $\chi_{\mu}^{-}$do not act as true annihilation operators. Try to find the "true" annihilation operators $\tilde{\chi}_{\mu}^{-}$associated with $\chi_{\nu}^{+}$, by requiring to satisfy the usual anticommutation rule

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left[\chi_{\mu}^{+}, \tilde{\chi}_{\nu}^{-}\right]_{+}=\delta_{\mu \nu} \tag{396}
\end{equation*}
$$

Expand $\tilde{\chi}_{\nu}^{-}$as linear combination of $\chi_{\nu}^{-}$

$$
\begin{equation*}
\tilde{\chi}_{\nu}^{-}=\sum_{\lambda} L_{\nu \lambda} \chi_{\lambda}^{-} \tag{397}
\end{equation*}
$$

Substitution into Eq.(396) gives

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left[\chi_{\mu}^{+}, \tilde{\chi}_{\nu}^{-}\right]_{+}=\sum_{\lambda} L_{\nu \lambda}\left[\chi_{\mu}^{+}, \chi_{\lambda}^{-}\right]_{+}=\sum_{\lambda} L_{\nu \lambda} S_{\lambda \mu}=\delta_{\mu \nu} \tag{398}
\end{equation*}
$$

The above relationship is satisfied if $\boldsymbol{L}=\boldsymbol{S}^{-1}$

$$
\begin{equation*}
\tilde{\chi}_{\nu}^{-}=\sum_{\lambda} S_{\nu \lambda}^{-1} \chi_{\lambda}^{-} \tag{399}
\end{equation*}
$$

In general, a set of functions $\left\{\tilde{\chi}_{i}\right\}$ form the bi-orthogonal set related to the non-orthogonal set $\left\{\chi_{i}\right\}$ if they satisfy the $\left\langle\tilde{\chi}_{i} \mid \chi_{j}\right\rangle=\delta_{i j}$ relation. The $\tilde{\chi}_{\lambda}^{-}$operators form a bi-orthogonal set related to $\chi_{\mu}^{-}$.
Let us write the Hamiltonian with the symmetrically orthogonalized auxiliary AO basis set $\psi_{i}=$ $\sum_{\mu} S_{i \mu}^{-1 / 2} \chi_{\mu}$. In this orthogonal basis the Hamiltonian has the usual form

$$
\begin{equation*}
\hat{H}=\sum_{i j} h_{i j} \psi_{i}^{+} \psi_{j}^{-}+\frac{1}{2} \sum_{i j k l}\langle i j \mid k l\rangle \psi_{i}^{+} \psi_{j}^{+} \psi_{l}^{-} \psi_{k}^{-} \tag{400}
\end{equation*}
$$

After transformation of the operators to the original overlapping AO basis

$$
\begin{align*}
\hat{H} & =\sum_{i j} \sum_{\mu \nu} h_{i j} S_{\mu i}^{-1 / 2} S_{j \nu}^{-1 / 2} \chi_{\mu}^{+} \chi_{\nu}^{-} \\
& +\frac{1}{2} \sum_{i j k l} \sum_{\mu \nu \lambda \sigma}\langle i j \mid k l\rangle S_{\mu i}^{-1 / 2} S_{\nu j}^{-1 / 2} S_{l \sigma}^{-1 / 2} S_{k \lambda}^{-1 / 2} \chi_{\mu}^{+} \chi_{\nu}^{+} \chi_{\sigma}^{-} \chi_{\lambda}^{-} \tag{401}
\end{align*}
$$

Transform back the one-electron integrals too into the original basis

$$
\begin{equation*}
h_{i j}=\sum_{\alpha \beta} S_{i \alpha}^{-1 / 2} S_{\beta j}^{-1 / 2} h_{\alpha \beta} \tag{402}
\end{equation*}
$$

and similarly for the two-electron integrals. Summation over $i, k$ and $i, j, k, l$ leads to the following relatively simple form

$$
\begin{equation*}
\hat{H}=\sum_{\mu \nu \alpha \beta} S_{\mu \alpha}^{-1} h_{\alpha \beta} S_{\beta \nu}^{-1} \chi_{\mu}^{+} \chi_{\nu}^{-}+\frac{1}{2} \sum_{\mu \nu \lambda \sigma} \sum_{\alpha \beta \gamma \delta} S_{\mu \alpha}^{-1} S_{\nu \beta}^{-1}\langle\alpha \beta \mid \gamma \delta\rangle S_{\gamma \sigma}^{-1} S_{\delta \lambda}^{-1} \chi_{\mu}^{+} \chi_{\nu}^{+} \chi_{\sigma}^{-} \chi_{\lambda}^{-} \tag{403}
\end{equation*}
$$

We can take advantage of the simple anticommutation relations between $\chi_{\mu}^{+}$and $\tilde{\chi}_{\lambda}^{-}$, if we use the above Hamiltonian in the following form

$$
\begin{equation*}
\hat{H}=\sum_{\mu \nu} h_{\tilde{\mu} \nu} \chi_{\mu}^{+} \tilde{\chi}_{\nu}^{-}+\frac{1}{2} \sum_{\mu \nu \lambda \sigma}\langle\tilde{\mu} \tilde{\lambda} \mid \nu \sigma\rangle \chi_{\mu}^{+} \chi_{\nu}^{+} \tilde{\chi}_{\sigma}^{-} \tilde{\chi}_{\lambda}^{-} \tag{404}
\end{equation*}
$$

where the half-transformed integrals are defined as

$$
\begin{equation*}
h_{\tilde{\mu} \nu}=\sum_{\lambda} S_{\mu \lambda}^{-1} h_{\lambda \nu} \tag{405}
\end{equation*}
$$

and

$$
\begin{equation*}
(\tilde{\mu} \tilde{\lambda} \mid \nu \sigma)=\sum_{\tau \epsilon} S_{\mu \tau}^{-1} S_{\lambda \epsilon}^{-1}(\tau \epsilon \mid \nu \sigma) \tag{406}
\end{equation*}
$$

In order to calculate the expectation values of the operator strings in this energy expression, let us consider the $\mathrm{AO} / \mathrm{MO}$ transformations in both original and bi-orthogonal bases.

$$
\begin{equation*}
\phi=\boldsymbol{C}^{\dagger} \boldsymbol{\chi} \quad \boldsymbol{\chi}=\left(\boldsymbol{C}^{\dagger}\right)^{-1} \phi \tag{407}
\end{equation*}
$$

using that the MOs are orthonormal

$$
\begin{equation*}
\boldsymbol{C}^{\dagger} \boldsymbol{S C}=1 \quad\left(\boldsymbol{C}^{\dagger}\right)^{-1}=\boldsymbol{S} \boldsymbol{C} \tag{408}
\end{equation*}
$$

and the definition of the bi-orthogonal orbitals

$$
\begin{equation*}
\tilde{\chi}=\chi^{\dagger} \boldsymbol{S}^{-1}=\phi^{\dagger} C^{\dagger} \tag{409}
\end{equation*}
$$

we get the relationships

$$
\begin{equation*}
\chi_{\mu}^{+}=\sum_{i}\left(\boldsymbol{C}^{\dagger} \boldsymbol{S}\right)_{i \mu} \phi_{i}^{+} \quad \tilde{\chi}_{\mu}^{-}=\sum_{i} c_{\mu i} \phi_{i}^{-} \tag{410}
\end{equation*}
$$

Substitution of these expressions and taking the expectation value

$$
\begin{align*}
\left\langle\chi_{\mu}^{+} \tilde{\chi}_{\nu}^{-}\right\rangle & =(\boldsymbol{P S})_{\nu \mu} \\
\left\langle\chi_{\mu}^{+} \chi_{\nu}^{+} \tilde{\chi}_{\sigma}^{-} \tilde{\chi}_{\lambda}^{-}\right\rangle & =\sum_{\eta \tau} \Gamma_{\sigma \lambda \eta \tau} S_{\eta \mu} S_{\tau \nu} \tag{411}
\end{align*}
$$

In the special case of HF wave functions we obtain for the two-particle string

$$
\begin{align*}
\langle\mathrm{HF}| \chi_{\mu}^{+} \chi_{\nu}^{+} \tilde{\chi}_{\sigma}^{-} \tilde{\chi}_{\lambda}^{-}|\mathrm{HF}\rangle & =\sum_{\eta \tau}\left(P_{\sigma \tau} P_{\lambda \eta}-P_{\sigma \eta} P_{\lambda \tau}\right) S_{\eta \mu} S_{\tau \nu}  \tag{412}\\
& =(\boldsymbol{P S})_{\sigma \nu}(\boldsymbol{P S})_{\lambda \mu}-(\boldsymbol{P S})_{\sigma \mu}(\boldsymbol{P S})_{\lambda \nu}
\end{align*}
$$

### 14.11 Hellmann-Feynman theorem

Consider a Hamiltonian, which depends on one or more parameters, $\alpha_{i}$

$$
\begin{equation*}
\hat{H}(\boldsymbol{\alpha})=\hat{H}(0)+\sum_{i} \alpha_{i} \hat{A}_{i} \tag{413}
\end{equation*}
$$

The first derivative of the total energy for a (normalized) Hartree-Fock determinant wave function, $D$ is

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{\partial E}{\partial \alpha_{i}}=\frac{\partial}{\partial \alpha_{i}}\langle D| \hat{H}|D\rangle=\left\langle\frac{\partial D}{\partial \alpha_{i}}\right| \hat{H}|D\rangle+\langle D| \frac{\partial \hat{H}}{\partial \alpha_{i}}|D\rangle+\langle D| \hat{H}\left|\frac{\partial D}{\partial \alpha_{i}}\right\rangle \tag{414}
\end{equation*}
$$

Since the Hartree-Fock wave function is stationary with respect to any variation in the class of one-determinant wave functions, we remain with

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{\partial E}{\partial \alpha}=\langle D| \frac{\partial \hat{H}}{\partial \alpha}|D\rangle=\langle D| \hat{A}_{i}|D\rangle \tag{415}
\end{equation*}
$$

The exact Hartree-Fock wave function satisfies the Hellmann-Feynman theorem.

Let us apply this result to the calculation of the molecular dipole moment. The Hamiltonian in the presence of an electric field

$$
\hat{H}(\mathbf{F})=\hat{H}(0)+F_{\alpha} \hat{\mu}_{\alpha}
$$

where $\hat{\mu}_{\alpha}$ is the $\alpha=x, y, z$ component of the multipole moment operator. Expanding the total energy in Taylor series

$$
\begin{equation*}
E(\mathbf{F})=E(0)+\left(\frac{\partial E(\mathbf{F})}{\partial F_{\alpha}}\right)_{\mathbf{F}=0} F_{\alpha}+\frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{\partial^{2} E(\mathbf{F})}{\partial F_{\alpha} \partial F_{\beta}}\right)_{\mathbf{F}=0} F_{\alpha} F_{\beta}+\ldots \tag{416}
\end{equation*}
$$

The dipole moment is defined as

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mu_{\alpha}=-\left(\frac{\partial E(\mathbf{F})}{\partial F_{\alpha}}\right)_{\mathbf{F}=0} \tag{417}
\end{equation*}
$$

According the previous result, the dipole moment can be calculated from a HF wave function as the expectation value

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mu_{\alpha}=-\langle D| \hat{\mu}_{\alpha}|D\rangle \tag{418}
\end{equation*}
$$

In the case of non-variational wave functions the molecular properties must be calculated from the energy derivatives.

### 14.12 Hartree-Fock gradients

Exact solutions of the molecular Hamiltonian require infinite basis sets. The advantage of the SQ formalism is that eigenfunctions of the SQ Hamiltonian in a given finite basis set are exact solutions of this model Hamiltonian. Therefore, the Hellmann-Feynman theorem applies to its exact eigenfunctions, as well as variational solutions, like the Hartree-Fock wave function,in the given finite basis.
The derivative of the energy can be calculated as

$$
\begin{equation*}
\delta E=\langle\Psi| \delta \hat{H}|\Psi\rangle \tag{419}
\end{equation*}
$$

The derivative of the SQ Hamiltonian

$$
\begin{equation*}
\delta \hat{H}=\sum_{\mu \nu} \delta h_{\tilde{\mu} \nu} \chi_{\mu}^{+} \tilde{\chi}_{\nu}^{+}+\frac{1}{2} \sum_{\mu \nu \lambda \sigma} \delta\langle\tilde{\mu} \tilde{\lambda} \mid \nu \sigma\rangle \chi_{\mu}^{+} \chi_{\nu}^{+} \tilde{\chi}_{\sigma}^{-} \tilde{\chi}_{\lambda}^{-} \tag{420}
\end{equation*}
$$

Use the expectation values of the operator strings and the following relationships to calculate the derivative of the half-transformed AO-integrals, e.g.

$$
\begin{equation*}
\delta\left(\boldsymbol{S}^{-1} \boldsymbol{h}\right)=\delta \boldsymbol{S}^{-1} \cdot \boldsymbol{h}+\boldsymbol{S}^{-1} \cdot \delta \boldsymbol{h} \quad \delta \boldsymbol{S}^{-1}=\boldsymbol{S}^{-1} \delta \boldsymbol{S} \boldsymbol{S}^{-1} \tag{421}
\end{equation*}
$$

We obtain for the special case HF wave function

$$
\begin{equation*}
\delta E^{\mathrm{HF}}=\sum_{\mu \nu} \delta h_{\mu \nu} P_{\mu \nu}+\frac{1}{2} \sum_{\mu \nu \lambda \sigma} \delta\langle\mu \nu \mid \lambda \sigma\rangle\left(P_{\lambda \mu} P_{\sigma \nu}-P_{\lambda \nu} P_{\sigma \mu}\right)-\sum_{\mu \nu \lambda \sigma} F_{\mu \nu} P_{\nu \lambda} \delta S_{\lambda \sigma} S_{\sigma \mu}^{-1} \tag{422}
\end{equation*}
$$

Using the definition of the P-matrix and the SCF condition $\sum_{\nu} F_{\mu \nu} c_{n u i}=\varepsilon_{i} \sum_{\nu} S_{\mu \nu} c_{\nu i}$ the last term can be rewritten as

$$
\begin{equation*}
-\sum_{\mu \nu} \underbrace{\sum_{i}^{o c c} \varepsilon_{i} c_{\mu i} c_{\nu i}^{*}}_{W_{\mu \nu}} \delta S_{\nu \mu} \tag{423}
\end{equation*}
$$

and we obtain the final result

$$
\begin{equation*}
\delta E^{\mathrm{HF}}=\sum_{\mu \nu} \delta h_{\mu \nu} P_{\mu \nu}+\frac{1}{2} \sum_{\mu \nu \lambda \sigma} \delta\langle\mu \nu \mid \lambda \sigma\rangle\left(P_{\lambda \mu} P_{\sigma \nu}-P_{\lambda \nu} P_{\sigma \mu}\right)-\sum_{\mu \nu} W_{\mu \nu} \delta S_{\nu \mu} \tag{424}
\end{equation*}
$$

This expression is completely general. In the special case of forces the derivatives are taken with respect to the nuclear coordinates. Since the atomic orbitals follow the nuclei (orbital following) the geometrical derivatives of the integrals enter in the force expression (wave function forces).

### 14.13 BSSE

Take a complex $\mathrm{A} \bigcup \mathrm{B}$ and trace the energy as a function of their separation, $E_{\mathrm{A} \cup \mathrm{B}}(\boldsymbol{R}, \boldsymbol{\Omega})$. As a consequence of the orbital-following principle, we have a different basis set at each distance and relative orientation. In particular, for the interaction energy

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Delta E=E_{\mathrm{A} \cup \mathrm{~B}}(\boldsymbol{R}, \boldsymbol{\Omega})-E_{\mathrm{A} \cup \mathrm{~B}}(\boldsymbol{R}=\infty, \boldsymbol{\Omega})=E_{\mathrm{A} \cup \mathrm{~B}}(\boldsymbol{R}, \boldsymbol{\Omega})-E_{\mathrm{A}}-E_{\mathrm{B}} \tag{425}
\end{equation*}
$$

At small separations the partner basis functions improve the monomer description (nothing to do with the physical interaction) and lead to an extra stabilization of the complex.
Remedy: Boys-Bernardi counterpoise correction
Calculate monomer energies in the dimer basis at each geometry

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Delta E=E_{\mathrm{A} \cup \mathrm{~B}}(\boldsymbol{R}, \boldsymbol{\Omega})-E_{\mathrm{A}}(\mathrm{~A} \cup \mathrm{~B} \mid \boldsymbol{R}, \boldsymbol{\Omega})-E_{\mathrm{B}}(\mathrm{~A} \cup \mathrm{~B} \mid \boldsymbol{R}, \boldsymbol{\Omega}) \tag{426}
\end{equation*}
$$

As an example, the dissociation curve of the Ar dimer. An artificial minimum appears in the RHF calculations; after counterpoise correction the potential curve has no minimum (electron correlation would be needed to describe the van der Waals minimum in this system).

### 14.14 Response properties

In the Taylor-expansion of the total energy of a system in the presence of an external perturbation

$$
\begin{equation*}
E(\mathbf{F})=E(0)+\left(\frac{\partial E(\mathbf{F})}{\partial F_{\alpha}}\right)_{\mathbf{F}=0} F_{\alpha}+\frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{\partial^{2} E(\mathbf{F})}{\partial F_{\alpha} \partial F_{\beta}}\right)_{\mathbf{F}=0} F_{\alpha} F_{\beta}+\ldots \tag{427}
\end{equation*}
$$

the second-order terms are related to the polarizability, i.e. linear response of the system to the perturbation

$$
\begin{equation*}
\alpha_{\alpha \beta}=\left(\frac{\partial^{2} E(\mathbf{F})}{\partial F_{\alpha} \partial F_{\beta}}\right)_{\mathbf{F}=0} \tag{428}
\end{equation*}
$$

We can apply the general Taylor-expansion of the energy by remarking that in the presence of an external perturbation

$$
\begin{align*}
\hat{H} & =\hat{H}_{0}+\hat{H}^{\prime} \\
\boldsymbol{a} & =\boldsymbol{\nabla} H=\boldsymbol{\nabla} H_{0}+\boldsymbol{\nabla} H^{\prime} \tag{429}
\end{align*}
$$

If the unperturbed energy is variational, $\nabla H_{0}=0$, we obtain the following equation for the parameter variations, $\boldsymbol{d}$ that make the perturbed system energy stationary

$$
\binom{\boldsymbol{\nabla} H^{\prime}}{H^{\prime} \nabla}+\left(\begin{array}{ll}
\boldsymbol{M} & \boldsymbol{Q}  \tag{430}\\
\boldsymbol{Q}^{*} & \boldsymbol{M}^{*}
\end{array}\right)\binom{\boldsymbol{d}}{\boldsymbol{d}^{*}}=0
$$

which simplifies in case of real wave function and perturbation as

$$
\begin{equation*}
\boldsymbol{\nabla} H^{\prime}+(\boldsymbol{M}+\boldsymbol{Q}) \boldsymbol{d}=\mathbf{0} \tag{431}
\end{equation*}
$$

The first order parameter change, $\boldsymbol{d}$ is proportional to the derivative of the Hamiltonian $\boldsymbol{a}=\boldsymbol{\nabla} H^{\prime}$

$$
\begin{equation*}
\boldsymbol{d}=(\boldsymbol{M}+\boldsymbol{Q})^{-1} \boldsymbol{a} \tag{432}
\end{equation*}
$$

In the case of an external field perturbation $\hat{H}^{\prime}=\sum_{\alpha} F_{\alpha} \hat{\mu}_{\alpha}$ the energy can be expressed as

$$
\begin{equation*}
E=E_{0}-2 \sum_{\alpha} \sum_{\beta} F_{\alpha}\left(\boldsymbol{\nabla} \mu_{\alpha}\right)^{\dagger}(\boldsymbol{M}+\boldsymbol{Q})^{-1}\left(\boldsymbol{\mu}_{\beta} \boldsymbol{\nabla}\right) F_{\beta} \tag{433}
\end{equation*}
$$

Comparison with the definition of the electric dipole polarizability yields immediately

$$
\begin{equation*}
\alpha_{\alpha \beta}=\left(\boldsymbol{\nabla} \mu_{\alpha}\right)^{\dagger}(\boldsymbol{M}+\boldsymbol{Q})^{-1}\left(\boldsymbol{\mu}_{\beta} \boldsymbol{\nabla}\right) \tag{434}
\end{equation*}
$$

### 14.15 General wave function variation

We have seen that the first order variation of a single determinant wave function can be parameterized as

$$
\begin{equation*}
|\Psi\rangle=\left|\Psi_{0}\right\rangle+\sum_{a r} p_{a r}\left|\Psi_{a}^{r}\right\rangle \tag{435}
\end{equation*}
$$

A more general approach, valid to any kind of wave function and also to higher order variations, can be developed by SQ.
Let us describe the variation of orbitals as resulting from a unitary transformation, $\psi_{i}^{\prime}=\sum_{k} \psi_{k} U_{k i}$, which means that the corresponding creation and annihilation operators transform according to

$$
\begin{align*}
a_{i}^{\prime \dagger} & =\sum_{k} a_{k}^{\dagger} U_{k i}  \tag{436}\\
a_{i}^{\prime} & =\sum_{k} a_{k} U_{k i}^{*}
\end{align*}
$$

- The unitary transformation can be written as

$$
\begin{equation*}
a_{i}^{\prime+}=\exp (-i \hat{\Lambda}) a_{i}^{+} \exp (i \hat{\Lambda}) \tag{437}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\hat{\Lambda}$ is a hermitian operator

$$
\begin{equation*}
\hat{\Lambda}=\sum_{i} \sum_{j} \Lambda_{i j} a_{i}^{+} a_{j} \tag{438}
\end{equation*}
$$

Using the expansion of the exponential operator

$$
\begin{equation*}
\exp (-i \hat{\Lambda}) a_{i}^{+} \exp (i \hat{\Lambda})=a_{i}^{+}+\left[a_{i}^{+}, i \hat{\Lambda}\right]+\frac{1}{2}\left[\left[a_{i}^{+}, i \hat{\Lambda}\right], i \hat{\Lambda}\right]+\ldots \tag{439}
\end{equation*}
$$

The commutator expressions can be simplified using the anticommutator relationships, e.g.

$$
\begin{align*}
{\left[a_{i}^{+}, a_{k}^{+} a_{l}\right] } & =a_{i}^{+} a_{k}^{+} a_{l}-a_{k}^{+} a_{l} a_{i}^{+} \\
& =-a_{k}^{+} a_{i}^{+} a_{l}-a_{k}^{+} a_{l} a_{i}^{+}  \tag{440}\\
& =-a_{k}^{+}\left(\delta_{i l}-a_{l} a_{i}^{+}\right)-a_{k}^{+} a_{l} a_{i}^{+}=-a_{k}^{+} \delta_{i l}
\end{align*}
$$

Applied to the first commutator

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left[a_{i}^{+}, i \hat{\Lambda}\right]=\sum_{k l} i \Lambda_{k l}\left[a_{i}^{+}, a_{k}^{+} a_{l}\right]=\sum_{k l} i \Lambda_{k l}\left(-a_{k}^{+} \delta_{i l}\right)=-\sum_{k} a_{k}^{+} i \Lambda_{k i} \tag{441}
\end{equation*}
$$

The second-order commutator yields

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left[\left[a_{i}^{+}, i \hat{\Lambda}\right], i \hat{\Lambda}\right]=\sum_{k} a_{k}^{+}(i \Lambda i \Lambda)_{k i} \tag{442}
\end{equation*}
$$

and finally one can show that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\exp (-i \hat{\Lambda}) a_{i}^{+} \exp (i \hat{\Lambda})=\sum_{k} a_{k}^{+}\left(1-i \hat{\Lambda}+\frac{1}{2}(i \hat{\Lambda} i \hat{\Lambda})+\ldots\right)_{k i}=\sum_{k} a_{k}^{+} \exp (-i \hat{\Lambda})_{k i} \tag{443}
\end{equation*}
$$

This is a unitary transformation, provided that $\boldsymbol{\Lambda}$ is hermitian, i.e. we can parameterize the transformation as

$$
\begin{equation*}
\boldsymbol{U}=\exp (-i \boldsymbol{\Lambda}) \tag{444}
\end{equation*}
$$

- The effect of orbital transformations is identical to a unitary (norm conserving!) transformation of the wave function. Consider a transformed determinant $\Psi$

$$
\begin{align*}
\left|\Psi^{\prime}\right\rangle & =a_{1}^{\prime+} a_{2}^{\prime+} \ldots a_{N}^{\prime}{ }^{+}|\mathrm{vac}\rangle \\
& =\mathrm{e}^{(-i \hat{\Lambda})} a_{1}^{+} \mathrm{e}^{(i \hat{\Lambda})} \mathrm{e}^{(-i \hat{\Lambda})} a_{2}^{+} \mathrm{e}^{(i \hat{\Lambda})} \ldots \mathrm{e}^{(-i \hat{\Lambda})} a_{N}^{+} \mathrm{e}^{(i \hat{\Lambda})}|\mathrm{vac}\rangle  \tag{445}\\
& =\exp (-i \hat{\Lambda}) a_{1}^{+} a_{2}^{+} \ldots a_{N}^{+}|\mathrm{vac}\rangle=\exp (-i \hat{\Lambda})|\Psi\rangle
\end{align*}
$$

and the result holds for any linear combination of determinants too.

- Since the hermitian matrix $\boldsymbol{\Lambda}$ can be expressed with the real symmetric and antisymmetric matrices $\boldsymbol{\lambda}$ and $\boldsymbol{K}$ as $\boldsymbol{\Lambda}=\boldsymbol{\lambda}+i \boldsymbol{K}$ and the purely imaginary part of the transformation concerns only an uninteresting phase factor $\exp (i \boldsymbol{\lambda})$, we can write

$$
\begin{equation*}
\hat{U}=\exp (-i \hat{\Lambda})=\exp (\hat{K}) \tag{446}
\end{equation*}
$$

- For small values of the transformation parameters, $\Lambda_{k l}$, we can expand the exponential operator as

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left|\Psi^{\prime}\right\rangle=\exp (\hat{K})|\Psi\rangle=|\Psi\rangle+\sum_{k l} K_{k l} a_{k}^{+} a_{l}|\Psi\rangle-\frac{1}{2} \sum_{k l} \sum_{m n} K_{k l} K_{m n} a_{k}^{+} a_{l} a_{m}^{+} a_{n}|\Psi\rangle+\ldots \tag{447}
\end{equation*}
$$

Bring the operator product of last term in the normal order

$$
\begin{equation*}
a_{k}^{+} a_{l} a_{m}^{+} a_{n}=a_{k}^{+}\left(\delta_{l m}-a_{m}^{+} a_{l}\right) a_{n}=\delta_{l m} a_{k}^{+} a_{n}+a^{k} a_{m}^{+} a_{n} a_{l} \tag{448}
\end{equation*}
$$

and the transformed wave function is written as a linear combination of singly-, doubly-, etc. excited configurations

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left|\Psi^{\prime}\right\rangle=|\Psi\rangle+\sum_{k l} K_{k l}\left|\Psi_{l}^{k}\right\rangle-\frac{1}{2} \sum_{k l} \sum_{m n} K_{k l} K_{m n}\left(\delta_{l m}\left|\Psi_{l}^{k}\right\rangle+\left|\Psi_{l n}^{k m}\right\rangle\right)+\ldots \tag{449}
\end{equation*}
$$

### 14.16 Coupled Hartree-Fock equations

Having a general expression of the parameterization of the wave function, we can write the energy as

$$
\begin{align*}
E & =\langle\Psi| \mathrm{e}^{-\hat{K}} \hat{H} \mathrm{e}^{\hat{K}}|\Psi\rangle \\
& =\langle\Psi|\left(1-\hat{K}+\frac{1}{2!} \hat{K}^{2}-\ldots\right) \hat{H}\left(1+\hat{K}+\frac{1}{2!} K^{2}+\ldots\right)|\Psi\rangle  \tag{450}\\
& =\langle\Psi| \hat{H}|\Psi\rangle+\langle\Psi|[\hat{H}, \hat{K}]|\Psi\rangle+\frac{1}{2!}\langle\Psi|[[\hat{H}, \hat{K}], \hat{K}]|\Psi\rangle+\ldots
\end{align*}
$$

The operator $\hat{K}$ can be written in term of the one-particle excitation operators $\hat{E}_{i j}$ as

$$
\begin{equation*}
\hat{K}=\sum_{i j} p_{i j} a_{i}^{+} a_{j}=\sum_{i j} p_{i j} \hat{E}_{i j} \tag{451}
\end{equation*}
$$

and the Taylor expansion of the energy (for real wave function and variations)

$$
\begin{equation*}
E=\langle\Psi| \hat{H}|\Psi\rangle+\sum_{i j} p_{i j}\langle\Psi|\left[\hat{H}, \hat{E}_{i j}\right]|\Psi\rangle+\frac{1}{2!} \sum_{i j} \sum_{k l} p_{i j} p_{k l}\langle\Psi|\left[\left[\hat{H}, \hat{E}_{i j}\right], \hat{E}_{k l}\right]|\Psi\rangle+\ldots \tag{452}
\end{equation*}
$$

The $\boldsymbol{M}$ and $\boldsymbol{Q}$ matrices can be identified as

$$
\begin{align*}
Q_{i j, k l} & =\langle\Psi| \hat{E}_{i j} \hat{H} \hat{E}_{k l}+\hat{E}_{k l} \hat{H} \hat{E}_{i j}|\Psi\rangle \\
M_{i j, k l} & =-\langle\Psi| \hat{H} \hat{E}_{i j} \hat{E}_{k l}+\hat{E}_{k l} \hat{E}_{i j} \hat{H}|\Psi\rangle \tag{453}
\end{align*}
$$

The matrix elements in the second derivative of the energy for the special case of a Hartree-Fock wave function are obtained after expansion of the SQ operators.

## 15 Comparison of RHF and UHF solutions

Example of the Li atom

$1 s \alpha$ and $1 s \beta$ electrons experience different effective potentials (with and without exchange interaction with $2 s \alpha$ ). The $2 s \alpha$ electron "polarizes" the $1 s$ shell, and the corresponding spatial functions tend to be different.
The unrestricted doublet state can be expanded on the basis of exact doublet, quadruplet, etc. states:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left.\left.\right|^{2} \Psi_{\mathrm{UHF}}\right\rangle=c_{2}|2\rangle+c_{4}|4\rangle+c_{6}|6\rangle+\ldots \tag{454}
\end{equation*}
$$

Since the contamination comes always from higher multiplicity components, $\left\langle S^{2}\right\rangle_{\mathrm{UHF}}$ is always too large, as can be seen from its expression.

### 15.1 RHF solution of minimal basis $\mathbf{H}_{2}$

The molecular orbitals are fully determined by symmetry

$$
\begin{align*}
\phi_{1} & =\frac{1}{\sqrt{2\left(1+S_{A B}\right)}}\left(\chi_{a}+\chi_{b}\right) \\
\phi_{2} & =\frac{1}{\sqrt{2\left(1-S_{A B}\right)}}\left(\chi_{b}-\chi_{b}\right) \tag{455}
\end{align*}
$$

where $\chi_{a}$ and $\chi_{b}$ are $1 s$ atomic orbitals on the two H atoms.

As the form of orbitals does not depend on the intermolecular separation, we can analyze the case $R_{a b} \rightarrow \infty$, when $S_{a b}=\left\langle\chi_{a} \mid \chi_{b}\right\rangle \rightarrow 0$. The one-determinant RHF wave function

$$
\begin{align*}
\Psi_{R \rightarrow \infty}^{\mathrm{RHF}} & =\hat{\mathcal{A}}\left[\phi_{1}(1) \alpha(1) \phi_{1}(2) \beta(2)\right] \\
& =\frac{1}{2} \hat{\mathcal{A}}\left[\left\{\chi_{a}(1)+\chi_{b}(1)\right\} \alpha(1)\left\{\chi_{a}(2)+\chi_{b}(2)\right\} \beta(2)\right]  \tag{456}\\
& =\frac{1}{2}\left\{\hat{\mathcal{A}}\left[\chi_{a} \bar{\chi}_{a}\right]+\hat{\mathcal{A}}\left[\chi_{b} \bar{\chi}_{b}\right] \quad\right. \text { ionic terms } \\
& \left.+\hat{\mathcal{A}}\left[\chi_{a} \bar{\chi}_{b}\right]+\hat{\mathcal{A}}\left[\chi_{b} \bar{\chi}_{a}\right]\right\} \quad \text { covalent terms }
\end{align*}
$$

The RHF wave function has an equal weight of "ionic" and "covalent" terms, instead of the correct dissociation limit

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Psi_{R \rightarrow \infty}=\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\left\{\hat{\mathcal{A}}\left[\chi_{a} \bar{\chi}_{b}\right]+\hat{\mathcal{A}}\left[\chi_{b} \bar{\chi}_{a}\right]\right\} \tag{457}
\end{equation*}
$$

i.e. the symmetrized combination of two H -atom wave functions.

### 15.2 UHF orbitals of minimal basis $\mathbf{H}_{2}$

The unrestricted orbitals are not symmetry-constrained. The one degree of freedom can be incorporated easily if we write the unrestricted orbitals as linear combination of the restricted ones

$$
\begin{equation*}
\phi_{1}^{\alpha, \beta}=\cos \theta \phi_{1} \pm \sin \theta \phi_{2} \quad \phi_{2}^{\alpha, \beta}=\mp \sin \theta \phi_{1}+\cos \theta \phi_{2} \tag{458}
\end{equation*}
$$

These are the unitary transformations which bring the orbitals from the original RHF set $\left\{\phi_{1}, \phi_{2}\right\}$ to the UHF ones.

$$
\boldsymbol{U}^{\alpha, \beta}=\left(\begin{array}{rr}
\cos \theta & \pm \sin \theta  \tag{459}\\
\mp \sin \theta & \cos \theta
\end{array}\right)=\exp \left(\begin{array}{rc}
0 & \pm \theta \\
\mp \theta & 0
\end{array}\right)
$$

The two occupied orbitals of interest can be written in terms of the AOs as

$$
\begin{equation*}
\phi_{1}^{\alpha}=c_{1} \chi_{a}+c_{2} \chi_{b} \quad \phi_{1}^{\beta}=c_{2} \chi_{a}+c_{1} \chi_{b} \tag{460}
\end{equation*}
$$

with the coefficients

$$
\begin{equation*}
c_{1,2}=\frac{1}{\sqrt{2\left(1+S_{a b}\right)}} \cos \theta \pm \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\left(1-S_{a b}\right)}} \sin \theta \tag{461}
\end{equation*}
$$

$$
\theta=0
$$

$$
0<\theta<\pi / 4
$$

$$
\theta=\pi / 4
$$

$\alpha$-spin MO

$\beta$-spin MO

$c_{1}=c_{2}$

$c_{1}>c_{2}$

$c_{1}=1.0 \quad c_{2}=0.0$

### 15.3 UHF solutions for minimal basis $\mathbf{H}_{2}$

UHF energy

$$
\begin{equation*}
E_{0}=\left(\phi_{1}^{\alpha}|\hat{h}| \phi_{1}^{\alpha}\right)+\left(\phi_{1}^{\beta}|\hat{h}| \phi_{1}^{\beta}\right)+\left(\phi_{1}^{\alpha} \phi_{1}^{\alpha} \mid \phi_{1}^{\beta} \phi_{1}^{\beta}\right) \tag{462}
\end{equation*}
$$

can be written after expanding the UHF orbitals in terms of the integrals over RHF MOs as

$$
\begin{align*}
E_{0}(\theta) & =2 \cos ^{2} \theta h_{11}+2 \sin ^{2} \theta h_{22} \\
& +\cos ^{4} \theta J_{11}+\sin ^{4} \theta J_{22}+2 \cos ^{2} \theta \sin ^{2} \theta\left(J_{12}-2 K_{12}\right) \tag{463}
\end{align*}
$$

The energy is extremum if

$$
\begin{align*}
d E_{0}(\theta) / d \theta & =4 \cos \theta \sin \theta \\
& \times\left[h_{22}-h_{11}+\sin ^{2} \theta J_{22}-\cos ^{2} \theta J_{11}\right.  \tag{464}\\
& \left.+\left(\cos ^{2} \theta-\sin ^{2} \theta\right)\left(J_{12}-2 K_{12}\right)\right]=0
\end{align*}
$$

- RHF solution exists at any interatomic distance with $\theta=0$, i.e.

$$
\begin{equation*}
4 \cos \theta \sin \theta=0 \tag{465}
\end{equation*}
$$

with energy

$$
\begin{equation*}
E_{0}(0)=2 h_{11}+J_{11}=2 \varepsilon_{1}-J_{11} \tag{466}
\end{equation*}
$$

- UHF solution exists, if at a given $R$ the values of integrals are such that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left[h_{22}-h_{11}+\sin ^{2} \theta J_{22}-\cos ^{2} \theta J_{11}+\left(\cos ^{2} \theta-\sin ^{2} \theta\right)\left(J_{12}-2 K_{12}\right)\right]=0 \tag{467}
\end{equation*}
$$

i.e. the equation

$$
\begin{equation*}
\cos ^{2} \theta=\frac{h_{22}-h_{11}+J_{22}-J_{12}+2 K_{12}}{J_{11}+J_{22}-2 J_{12}+4 K_{12}} \tag{468}
\end{equation*}
$$

can be satisfied.

### 15.4 Stability of the RHF/UHF solutions

The nature of the restricted solution can be studied through the second derivative of the energy

$$
\begin{align*}
d^{2} E(\theta) /\left.d \theta^{2}\right|_{\theta=0}=E^{\prime \prime}(0) & =4\left(h_{22}-h_{11}+J_{22}-J_{12}+2 K_{12}\right)  \tag{469}\\
& =4\left(\varepsilon_{2}-\varepsilon_{1}-J_{12}-K_{12}\right)
\end{align*}
$$

At the "saddle point" $\left(E^{\prime \prime}(0)=0\right)$ the UHF and RHF solutions become separated.


### 15.5 Behaviour at dissociation

The UHF wave function tends to the correct dissociation limit, while the RHF leads to a "dissociation catastrophe".


The UHF wave function in the $R \rightarrow \infty$ limit is

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Psi_{R \rightarrow \infty}^{\mathrm{UHF}}=\hat{\mathcal{A}}\left[\chi_{a}(1) \bar{\chi}_{b}(2)\right] \tag{470}
\end{equation*}
$$

Instead of the correct (symmetrical) form

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Psi_{R \rightarrow \infty}=\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\left\{\hat{\mathcal{A}}\left[\chi_{a}(1) \bar{\chi}_{b}(2)\right]+\hat{\mathcal{A}}\left[\chi_{b}(1) \bar{\chi}_{a}(2)\right]\right\} \tag{471}
\end{equation*}
$$

Although the orbitals are correct, the wave function is not!
Expand the UHF wave function using the unitary transformation of the orbitals

$$
\begin{align*}
\left|\Psi^{\mathrm{UHF}}\right\rangle & =\left|\phi_{1}^{\alpha} \bar{\phi}_{1}^{\beta}\right\rangle=\left|\left(\cos \theta \phi_{1}+\sin \theta \phi_{2}\right)\left(\cos \theta \bar{\phi}_{1}-\sin \theta \bar{\phi}_{2}\right)\right\rangle \\
& =\cos ^{2} \theta\left|\phi_{1} \bar{\phi}_{1}\right\rangle-\sin ^{2} \theta\left|\phi_{2} \bar{\phi}_{2}\right\rangle-\cos \theta \sin \theta \underbrace{\left.\left[\left|\phi_{1} \bar{\phi}_{2}\right\rangle-\phi_{2} \bar{\phi}_{1}\right\rangle\right]}_{\left.\left.\sqrt{2}\right|^{3} \Psi_{1}^{2}\right\rangle} \tag{472}
\end{align*}
$$

There is a triplet contaminant, with growing weight as $R$ increases. At the dissociation limit ( $\theta=\pi / 4$ )

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left|\Psi_{R \rightarrow \infty}^{\mathrm{UHF}}\right\rangle=\frac{1}{2}\left[\left|\phi_{1} \bar{\phi}_{1}\right\rangle-\left|\phi_{2} \bar{\phi}_{2}\right\rangle\right]-\frac{1}{2}\left|{ }^{3} \Psi_{1}^{2}\right\rangle \tag{473}
\end{equation*}
$$

The triplet contaminant is the price to pay for having a one-determinant wave function.

## 16 Configuration interaction method

The multi-configurational wave function

$$
\begin{align*}
|\Phi\rangle & =c_{0}|\Psi\rangle+\left(\frac{1}{1!}\right)^{2} \sum_{a r} c_{a}^{r}\left|\Psi_{a}^{r}\right\rangle+\left(\frac{1}{2!}\right)^{2} \sum_{a b r s} c_{a b}^{r s}\left|\Psi_{a b}^{r s}\right\rangle \\
& +\left(\frac{1}{3!}\right)^{2} \sum_{\substack{a b c \\
r s t}} c_{a b c}^{r s t}\left|\Psi_{a b c}^{r s t}\right\rangle+\left(\frac{1}{4!}\right)^{2} \sum_{\substack{a b c d \\
r s t u}} c_{a b c d}^{r s t u}\left|\Psi_{a b c d}^{r s t u}\right\rangle+\ldots \tag{474}
\end{align*}
$$

where the coefficients are the eigenvectors of the CI-matrix.
The CI wave function is not normalized in the sense that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\langle\Phi \mid \Phi\rangle=1+\sum_{a b}\left(c_{a}^{b}\right)^{2}+\left(\frac{1}{2!}\right)^{4} \sum_{a b r s}\left(c_{a b}^{r s}\right)^{2}+\ldots \tag{475}
\end{equation*}
$$

However, it satisfies the intermediate normalization condition

$$
\begin{equation*}
\langle\Psi \mid \Phi\rangle=1 \tag{476}
\end{equation*}
$$

Schrödinger equation

$$
\begin{equation*}
\hat{H}|\Phi\rangle=\mathcal{E}_{0}|\Phi\rangle \tag{477}
\end{equation*}
$$

By subtracting $E_{0}|\Phi\rangle$

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left(\hat{H}-E_{0}\right)|\Phi\rangle=\left(\varepsilon_{0}-E_{0}\right)|\Phi\rangle=E_{\text {corr }}|\Phi\rangle \tag{478}
\end{equation*}
$$

multiplication and integration by $\langle\Psi|$

$$
\begin{equation*}
\langle\Psi| \hat{H}-E_{0}|\Phi\rangle=E_{\text {corr }}\langle\Psi \mid \Phi\rangle=E_{\text {corr }} \tag{479}
\end{equation*}
$$

lets appear explicitly the correlation energy, $E_{\text {corr }}$.
Substitute the CI-expansion of the wave function

$$
\begin{align*}
\langle\Psi| \hat{H}-E_{0}|\Phi\rangle & =\langle\Psi| \hat{H}-E_{0}\left(|\Psi\rangle+\sum_{c t} c_{c}^{t}\left|\Psi_{c}^{t}\right\rangle+\sum_{\substack{c<d \\
t<u}} c_{c d}^{t u}\left|\Psi_{c d}^{t u}\right\rangle+\ldots\right)  \tag{480}\\
& =\sum_{\substack{c<d \\
t<u}} c_{c d}^{t u}\langle\Psi| \hat{H}\left|\Psi_{c d}^{t u}\right\rangle
\end{align*}
$$

The (unnormalized) coefficients of the double excited configurations determine the correlation energy

$$
\begin{equation*}
E_{\text {corr }}=\sum_{\substack{c<d \\ t<u}} c_{c d}^{t u}\langle\Psi| \hat{H}\left|\Psi_{c d}^{t u}\right\rangle \tag{481}
\end{equation*}
$$

In order to know these coefficients exactly, we must solve the full CI problem!

## $17 \quad$ Structure of the CI matrix

The CI matrix

$$
\left(\begin{array}{cccccc}
\langle\Psi| \hat{H}|\Psi\rangle & 0 & \langle\Psi| \hat{H}|D\rangle & 0 & 0 & \ldots  \tag{482}\\
& \langle S| \hat{H}|S\rangle & \langle S| \hat{H}|D\rangle & \langle S| \hat{H}|T\rangle & 0 & \ldots \\
& & \langle D| \hat{H}|D\rangle & \langle D| \hat{H}|T\rangle & \langle D| \hat{H}|Q\rangle & \ldots \\
& & & \langle T| \hat{H}|T\rangle & \langle T| \hat{H}|Q\rangle & \ldots \\
& & & & \langle Q| \hat{H}|Q\rangle & \ldots
\end{array}\right)
$$

- Brillouin theorem $\langle\Psi| \hat{H}|S\rangle=0$
- Slater rules $\langle\Psi| \hat{H}|T\rangle=\langle\Psi| \hat{H}|Q\rangle=\langle S| \hat{H}|Q\rangle=0$
- nonzero blocks are sparse
- double excitations play a predominant role
- by indirect coupling all types of excitations contribute to the correclation energy


### 17.1 Doubly excited CI

Neglect all configurations except the doubly excited ones

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left|\Phi_{\mathrm{DCI}}\right\rangle=|\Psi\rangle+\sum_{\substack{c<d \\ t<u}} c_{c d}^{t u}\left|\Psi_{c d}^{t u}\right\rangle \tag{483}
\end{equation*}
$$

After substitution into

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left(\hat{H}-E_{0}\right)\left|\Phi_{\mathrm{DCI}}\right\rangle=E_{\mathrm{corr}}\left|\Phi_{\mathrm{DCI}}\right\rangle \tag{484}
\end{equation*}
$$

and successive multiplication by $\langle\Psi|$ and by $\left\langle\Psi_{a b}^{r s}\right|$ we obtain the system of equations

$$
\begin{align*}
\sum_{\substack{c<d \\
t<u}} c_{c d}^{t u}\langle\Psi| \hat{H}\left|\Psi_{c d}^{t u}\right\rangle & =E_{\mathrm{corr}}  \tag{485}\\
\left\langle\Psi_{a b}^{r s}\right| \hat{H}|\Psi\rangle+\sum_{\substack{c<d \\
t<u}} c_{c d}^{t u}\left\langle\Psi_{a b}^{r s}\right| \hat{H}-E_{0}\left|\Psi_{c d}^{t u}\right\rangle & =c_{a b}^{r s} E_{\mathrm{corr}}
\end{align*}
$$

Introduce the matrix notations

$$
\begin{align*}
(\boldsymbol{B})_{\text {rasb }} & =\left\langle\Psi_{a b}^{r s}\right| \hat{H}|\Psi\rangle \\
(\boldsymbol{D})_{\text {rasb }, \text { tcud }} & =\left\langle\Psi_{a b}^{r s}\right| \hat{H}-E_{0}\left|\Psi_{c d}^{t u}\right\rangle  \tag{486}\\
(\boldsymbol{c})_{\text {rasb }} & =c_{a b}^{r s}
\end{align*}
$$

and the DCI matrix equations are

$$
\left(\begin{array}{cc}
0 & \boldsymbol{B}^{\dagger}  \tag{487}\\
\boldsymbol{B} & \boldsymbol{D}
\end{array}\right)\binom{1}{\boldsymbol{c}}=E_{\mathrm{corr}}\binom{1}{\boldsymbol{c}}
$$

### 17.2 Approximate solutions of the DCI equations

The exact solution of the DCI problem is the lowest eigenvalue of the CI matrix

$$
\left(\begin{array}{cc}
0 & \boldsymbol{B}^{\dagger}  \tag{488}\\
\boldsymbol{B} & \boldsymbol{D}
\end{array}\right)
$$

We can solve this problem by the matrix partitioning technique by considering the corresponding partitioned system of equations

$$
\begin{align*}
\boldsymbol{B}^{\dagger} \boldsymbol{c} & =E_{\mathrm{corr}}  \tag{489}\\
\boldsymbol{B}+\boldsymbol{D} \boldsymbol{c} & =\boldsymbol{c} E_{\mathrm{corr}} \tag{490}
\end{align*}
$$

Solve the second equation for $\boldsymbol{c}$

$$
\begin{equation*}
\boldsymbol{c}=-\left(\boldsymbol{D}-\mathbf{1} E_{\text {corr }}\right)^{-1} \boldsymbol{B} \tag{491}
\end{equation*}
$$

and

$$
\begin{equation*}
E_{\text {corr }}=-\boldsymbol{B}^{\dagger}\left(\boldsymbol{D}-\mathbf{1} E_{\text {corr }}\right)^{-1} \boldsymbol{B} \tag{492}
\end{equation*}
$$

As a first approximation we can set $E_{\text {corr }}=0$ in the denominator and get

$$
\begin{equation*}
E_{\mathrm{corr}} \approx-\boldsymbol{B}^{\dagger} \boldsymbol{D}^{-1} \boldsymbol{B} \tag{493}
\end{equation*}
$$

This expression is not variational (not upper bound to the energy) but size-extensive (unlike truncated CI).

As a further simplification, we neglect off-diagonal elements of $\boldsymbol{D}$, i.e.

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left(\boldsymbol{D}^{-1}\right)_{r a s b, t u c d}=\frac{\delta_{a c} \delta_{b d} \delta_{r t} \delta_{s u}}{\left\langle\Psi_{a b}^{r s}\right| \hat{H}-E_{0}\left|\Psi_{a b}^{r s}\right\rangle} \tag{494}
\end{equation*}
$$

and the correlation energy becomes approximately

$$
\begin{equation*}
E_{\mathrm{corr}} \approx-\sum_{\substack{a<b \\ r<s}} \frac{\langle\Psi| \hat{H}\left|\Psi_{a b}^{r s}\right\rangle\left\langle\Psi_{a b}^{r s}\right| \hat{H}|\Psi\rangle}{\left\langle\Psi_{a b}^{r s}\right| \hat{H}-E_{0}\left|\Psi_{a b}^{r s}\right\rangle}=\sum_{\substack{a<b \\ r<s}} E_{\mathrm{corr}}\binom{r s}{a b} \tag{495}
\end{equation*}
$$

sum of double-excitation contributions.

### 17.3 Natural orbitals

Natural orbitals diagonalize the 1RDM for any (including multi-configurational) wave function. Take a two-electron singlet system with the following CI expansion

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left.\left|{ }^{1} \Phi\right\rangle=c_{0}|1 \overline{1}\rangle+\sum_{r=2}^{K} c_{1}^{r}\left|{ }^{1} \Psi_{1}^{r}\right\rangle+\left.\frac{1}{2} \sum_{r=2}^{K} \sum_{s=2}^{K} c_{11}^{r s}\right|^{1} \Psi_{11}^{r s}\right\rangle \tag{496}
\end{equation*}
$$

where the spin-adapted singlet configuration functions (CF) are

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left|{ }^{1} \Psi_{1}^{r}\right\rangle=\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(|1 \bar{r}\rangle+|r \overline{1}\rangle) \quad \quad\left|{ }^{1} \Psi_{11}^{r s}\right\rangle=\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(|r \bar{s}\rangle+|s \bar{r}\rangle) \tag{497}
\end{equation*}
$$

Substitute these CFs

$$
\begin{align*}
\left.{ }^{1} \Phi\right\rangle & =c_{0}|1 \overline{1}\rangle+\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \sum_{r=2}^{K} c_{1}^{r}\{|1 \bar{r}\rangle+|r \overline{1}\rangle\}+\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \sum_{r=2}^{K} \sum_{s=2}^{K} c_{11}^{r s}\{|r \bar{s}\rangle+|s \bar{r}\rangle\} \\
& =\sum_{i=1}^{K} \sum_{j=1}^{K} C_{i j} \mid \bar{j} \bar{j} \tag{498}
\end{align*}
$$

where the $C_{i j}$ coefficients form a symmetric matrix. The CI expansion contains $K^{2}$ terms. The 1RDM can be calculated as

$$
\begin{align*}
P\left(\boldsymbol{x}_{1}, \boldsymbol{x}_{1}^{\prime}\right) & =\sum_{i j} \sum_{k l} C_{i j}^{*} C_{k l} \int\left[i^{*}(1) \bar{j}^{*}(2)-i^{*}(2) \bar{j}^{*}(1)\right]\left[k^{*}\left(1^{\prime}\right) \bar{l}^{*}(2)-k^{*}(2) \bar{l}^{*}(1)\right] d 2  \tag{499}\\
& =\sum_{i j}\left(\boldsymbol{C} \boldsymbol{C}^{\dagger}\right)_{i j}\left[i(1) j^{*}\left(1^{\prime}\right)+\bar{i}(1) \bar{j}^{*}\left(1^{\prime}\right)\right]
\end{align*}
$$

Let us choose a transformation $\boldsymbol{U}$ such that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\boldsymbol{U}^{\dagger} \boldsymbol{C} \boldsymbol{U}=\boldsymbol{d} \tag{500}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\boldsymbol{d}$ is a diagonal matrix. The orbitals $\eta_{k}$ obtained from the transformation

$$
\begin{equation*}
\eta_{k}=\sum_{i} \psi_{i} U_{i k} \quad \text { and } \quad \psi_{i}=\sum_{m} \eta_{m} U_{i m} \tag{501}
\end{equation*}
$$

diagonalize the 1 RDM

$$
\begin{equation*}
P\left(\boldsymbol{x}_{1}, \boldsymbol{x}_{1}^{\prime}\right)=\sum_{i} d_{i}^{2}\left[\eta_{i}(1) \eta_{i}^{*}\left(1^{\prime}\right)+\bar{\eta}_{i}(1) \bar{\eta}_{i}^{*}\left(1^{\prime}\right)\right] \tag{502}
\end{equation*}
$$

Substitution in the CI expansion leads to

$$
\begin{align*}
\sum_{i j}^{K} C_{i j}|i \bar{j}\rangle & =\sum_{i j}^{K} \sum_{m n}^{K} U_{i m} C_{i j} U_{j n}\left|\eta_{m} \bar{\eta}_{n}\right\rangle  \tag{503}\\
& =\sum_{m n}^{K}\left(\boldsymbol{U}^{\dagger} \boldsymbol{C} \boldsymbol{U}\right)_{m n}\left|\eta_{m} \bar{\eta}_{n}\right\rangle=\sum_{m}^{K} d_{m}\left|\eta_{m} \bar{\eta}_{m}\right\rangle
\end{align*}
$$

which contains only $K$ terms instead of $K^{2}$ !

### 17.4 Minimal basis $\mathrm{H}_{2}$ molecule

Out of the six possible determinants four symmetry adapted configuration functions (CFs) can be formed

$$
\begin{array}{cll}
X^{1} \Sigma_{g}^{+} & |\Psi\rangle & =|1 \overline{1}\rangle \\
B^{1} \Sigma_{u}^{+} & \left|{ }^{1} \Psi_{1}^{2}\right\rangle & =|1 \overline{2}\rangle+|2 \overline{1}\rangle \\
E^{1} \Sigma_{g}^{+} & \left|{ }^{1} \Psi_{11}^{22}\right\rangle & =|2 \overline{2}\rangle \\
b^{3} \Sigma_{u}^{+} & \left|{ }^{3} \Psi_{1}^{2}\right\rangle=\left\{\begin{array}{l}
|12\rangle \\
|1 \overline{2}\rangle-|2 \overline{1}\rangle \\
|\overline{1} \overline{2}\rangle
\end{array}\right.
\end{array}
$$

Taking into account the spin multiplicity (singlet and triplet) and space symmetry ( $g$ or $u$ ), the CI matrix has the following structure

$$
\left(\begin{array}{cccc}
\left\langle{ }^{1} \Psi\right| \hat{H}\left|{ }^{1} \Psi\right\rangle & \left\langle{ }^{1} \Psi\right| \hat{H}\left|{ }^{1} \Psi_{11}^{22}\right\rangle & 0 & 0  \tag{504}\\
& \left\langle{ }^{1} \Psi_{11}^{22}\right| \hat{H}\left|{ }^{1} \Psi_{11}^{22}\right\rangle & 0 & 0 \\
& & \left.\left.\left\langle{ }^{1} \Psi_{1}^{2}\right| \hat{H}\right|^{1} \Psi_{1}^{2}\right\rangle & 0 \\
& & & \left.\left.\left\langle{ }^{3} \Psi_{1}^{2}\right| \hat{H}\right|^{3} \Psi_{1}^{2}\right\rangle
\end{array}\right)
$$

The energies of the $B^{1} \Sigma_{u}^{+}$state is given by

$$
\begin{align*}
\left.\left.\left\langle{ }^{1} \Psi_{1}^{2}\right| \hat{H}\right|^{1} \Psi_{1}^{2}\right\rangle & =\frac{1}{2}(\langle 1 \overline{2}| \hat{H}|1 \overline{2}\rangle-\langle 2 \overline{1}| \hat{H}|1 \overline{2}\rangle-\langle 1 \overline{2}| \hat{H}|2 \overline{1}\rangle+\langle 2 \overline{1}| \hat{H}|2 \overline{1}\rangle)  \tag{505}\\
& =h_{11}+h_{22}+J_{12}+K_{12}
\end{align*}
$$

and of the $b^{3} \Sigma_{u}^{+}$state

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left.\left.\left\langle{ }^{3} \Psi_{1}^{2}\right| \hat{H}\right|^{3} \Psi_{1}^{2}\right\rangle=\langle 12| \hat{H}|12\rangle=h_{11}+h_{22}+J_{12}-K_{12} \tag{506}
\end{equation*}
$$

which lies below the corresponding singlet state (Hund's rule) and tends to the limit of $E(H)$ at $R \rightarrow \infty$. The MO energies of the two ${ }^{1} \Sigma_{g}^{+}$states are

$$
\begin{equation*}
E^{\mathrm{MO}}\left(X^{1} \Sigma_{g}^{+}\right)=2 h_{11}+J_{11} \quad E^{\mathrm{MO}}\left(E^{1} \Sigma_{g}^{+}\right)=2 h_{22}+J_{22} \tag{507}
\end{equation*}
$$

which dissociate to the same limit (in the MO approximation!).


### 17.5 DCI of the minimal basis $\mathrm{H}_{2}$

To solve the $2 \times 2$ CI problem we need the matrix elements

$$
\begin{equation*}
(\boldsymbol{B})_{21 \overline{2} \overline{1}}=\left\langle\Psi_{1 \overline{1}}^{2 \overline{2}}\right| \hat{H}|\Psi\rangle=\langle\overline{1}||2 \overline{2}\rangle=[12 \mid \overline{1} \overline{2}]-[1 \overline{2} \mid \overline{1} 2]=(12 \mid 12)-0=K_{12} \tag{508}
\end{equation*}
$$

and

$$
\begin{equation*}
(\boldsymbol{D})_{21 \overline{2} \overline{1}, 21 \overline{2} \overline{1}}=\left\langle\Psi_{1 \overline{1}}^{2 \overline{2}}\right| \hat{H}-E_{0}\left|\Psi_{1 \overline{1}}^{2 \overline{2}}\right\rangle=2 h_{22}+J_{22}-2 h_{11}-J_{11} \tag{509}
\end{equation*}
$$

Using the orbital energies

$$
\begin{equation*}
\varepsilon_{1}=h_{11}+J_{11} \quad \varepsilon_{2}=h_{22}+2 J_{12}-K_{12} \tag{510}
\end{equation*}
$$

we can write

$$
\begin{equation*}
(\boldsymbol{D})_{21 \overline{2} \overline{1}, 21 \overline{2} \overline{1}}=2 \Delta=2\left(\varepsilon_{2}-\varepsilon_{1}\right)+J_{11}+J_{22}-4 J_{12}+2 K_{12} \tag{511}
\end{equation*}
$$

The DCI matrix takes the simple form

$$
\left(\begin{array}{cc}
0 & K_{12}  \tag{512}\\
K_{12} & 2 \Delta
\end{array}\right)\binom{1}{c}=E_{\text {corr }}\binom{1}{c}
$$

The solution can be found from

$$
\begin{array}{rlrl}
K_{12}+2 \Delta c & =E_{\mathrm{corr}} c & c & =\frac{K_{12}}{E_{\mathrm{corr}}-2 \Delta} \\
K_{12} c & =E_{\mathrm{corr}} & E_{\mathrm{corr}} & =\frac{K_{12}^{2}}{E_{\mathrm{corr}}-2 \Delta}
\end{array}
$$

The exact (in minimal basis) correlation energy is

$$
\begin{equation*}
E_{\mathrm{corr}}=\Delta-\sqrt{\Delta^{2}+K_{12}^{2}} \tag{515}
\end{equation*}
$$

At dissociation $\varepsilon_{1}=\varepsilon_{2}, h_{11}=h_{22}=E(H)$. Since all two-electron integrals $J_{11}=J_{22}=J_{12}=$ $K_{12}=\left(\chi_{a} \chi_{a} \mid \chi_{a} \chi_{a}\right)$ tend to the same value, $\Delta=0$ and the total energy

$$
\begin{equation*}
E^{\mathrm{CI}}\left(X^{1} \Sigma_{g}^{+}\right)=2 h_{11}+J_{11}+\Delta-\sqrt{\Delta^{2}+K_{12}^{2}} \tag{516}
\end{equation*}
$$

tends to $2 E(H)$.
In this limit the CI coefficient

$$
\begin{equation*}
c=\frac{-K_{12}}{\Delta+\left(\Delta^{2}+K_{12}^{2}\right)^{1 / 2}} \rightarrow-1 \tag{517}
\end{equation*}
$$

which means that the CI wave function in the dissociation limit

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left|\Psi_{R \rightarrow \infty}^{\mathrm{CI}}\right\rangle=|\Psi\rangle+\left|\Psi_{11}^{22}\right\rangle=\left|\chi_{a} \bar{\chi}_{b}\right\rangle+\left|\chi_{b} \bar{\chi}_{a}\right\rangle \tag{518}
\end{equation*}
$$

is the linear combination of two ground state H atoms.


### 17.6 Approximate CI solution of minimal basis $\mathbf{H}_{2}$

Use the approximate correlation energy expression

$$
\begin{equation*}
E_{\mathrm{corr}} \approx-\boldsymbol{B}^{\dagger} \boldsymbol{D}^{-1} \boldsymbol{B} \tag{519}
\end{equation*}
$$



In this special case, the one-particle density matrix is diagonal in the original MO basis $(\mathrm{NO}=\mathrm{MO})$. Using the normalized CI expansion coefficients

$$
\begin{equation*}
C_{11}=\frac{1}{\sqrt{1+c^{2}}} \quad C_{22}=\frac{c}{\sqrt{1+c^{2}}} \tag{520}
\end{equation*}
$$

the P-matrix

$$
\left(\begin{array}{cc}
C_{11}^{2} & 0  \tag{521}\\
0 & C_{22}^{2}
\end{array}\right)
$$



The "perturbational" correlation energy is a good $\exists$ approximation as far as $n_{1} \approx 1$ and it deteriorates when the wave function becomes multiconfigurational $\left(n_{1}<1\right)$.

### 17.7 Size-consistency problem

The energy of a non-interacting dimer (N-mer) should be the sum of monomer energies. The Hartee-Fock wave function of an infinitely separated dimer of $\mathrm{H}_{2}$ molecules is

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left|\Psi_{0}\right\rangle=\left|1_{1} \overline{1}_{1} 1_{2} \overline{1}_{2}\right\rangle \tag{522}
\end{equation*}
$$

with the energy

$$
\begin{equation*}
E_{0}=4 h_{11}+\left\langle 1_{1} \overline{1}_{1} \| 1_{1} \overline{1}_{1}\right\rangle+\left\langle 1_{2} \overline{1}_{2} \| 1_{2} \overline{1}_{2}\right\rangle+2\left\langle 1_{1} \overline{1}_{1} \| 1_{2} \overline{1}_{2}\right\rangle=2\left(2 h_{11}+J_{11}\right) \tag{523}
\end{equation*}
$$

sum of the monomer energies.
The DCI wave function involves only "local" excitations

$$
\begin{equation*}
|\Phi\rangle=\left|\Psi_{0}\right\rangle+\sum_{i=1}^{2} c_{i}\left|\Phi_{1_{i} \overline{1}_{i}}^{2 \overline{\bar{T}}_{i}}\right\rangle \tag{524}
\end{equation*}
$$

Matrix elements

$$
\begin{equation*}
\langle\Psi| \hat{H}\left|\Phi_{1_{1} \overline{1}_{1}}^{2_{1} \overline{1}_{1}}\right\rangle=\left\langle 1_{1} \overline{1}_{1}\right|\left|2_{1} \overline{2}_{1}\right\rangle=\left(1_{1} 2_{1} \mid 1_{1} 2_{1}\right)=K_{12} \tag{525}
\end{equation*}
$$

and the DCI matrix is

$$
\left(\begin{array}{ccc}
0 & K & K  \tag{526}\\
K & 2 \Delta & 0 \\
K & 0 & 2 \Delta
\end{array}\right)\left(\begin{array}{l}
1 \\
c \\
c
\end{array}\right)=E_{\operatorname{corr}}\left(\begin{array}{l}
1 \\
c \\
c
\end{array}\right)
$$

leading to the equations

$$
\begin{array}{rlrl}
K_{12}+2 \Delta c & =E_{\mathrm{corr}} c & c & =\frac{K_{12}}{E_{\mathrm{corr}}-2 \Delta} \\
2 K c & =E_{\mathrm{corr}} & E_{\mathrm{corr}} & =\frac{2 K_{12}^{2}}{E_{\mathrm{corr}}-2 \Delta} \tag{528}
\end{array}
$$

DCI correlation energy of the dimer

$$
\begin{equation*}
{ }^{(2)} E_{\mathrm{corr}}=\Delta-\sqrt{\Delta^{2}+2 K_{12}^{2}} \tag{529}
\end{equation*}
$$

is not equal to the sum of monomer correlation energies

$$
\begin{equation*}
{ }^{(2)} E_{\text {corr }} \neq 2^{(1)} E_{\mathrm{corr}}=2 \Delta-2 \sqrt{\Delta^{2}+K_{12}^{2}} \tag{530}
\end{equation*}
$$

Similar result holds for an N-mer:

$$
\begin{equation*}
{ }^{(N)} E_{\mathrm{corr}}=\Delta-\sqrt{\Delta^{2}+N K_{12}^{2}} \tag{531}
\end{equation*}
$$

which means that the DCI (truncated CI) correlation energy per monomer tends to 0 with increasing system size.
If we take the approximate correlation energy expression, applied to an N-mer

$$
\begin{equation*}
{ }^{(N)} E_{\mathrm{corr}} \approx-\sum_{i}^{N} \frac{\boldsymbol{B}_{i}^{\dagger} \boldsymbol{B}_{i}}{\boldsymbol{D}_{i}}=-\frac{N K}{2 \Delta} \tag{532}
\end{equation*}
$$

i.e. N times the approximate monomer correlation energy.

### 17.8 Full CI of a non-interacting $\mathbf{H}_{2}$ dimer

The wave function includes a quadruple excitation too

$$
\begin{equation*}
|\Phi\rangle=\left|\Psi_{0}\right\rangle+c_{1}\left|2_{1} \overline{2}_{1} 1_{2} \overline{1}_{2}\right\rangle+c_{2}\left|1_{1} \overline{1}_{1} 2_{2} \overline{2}_{2}\right\rangle+c_{3}\left|2_{1} \overline{2}_{1} 2_{2} \overline{2}_{2}\right\rangle \tag{533}
\end{equation*}
$$

The FCI matrix is augmented with respect to the DCI one

$$
\left(\begin{array}{cccc}
0 & K & K & 0  \tag{534}\\
K & 2 \Delta & 0 & K \\
K & 0 & 2 \Delta & K \\
0 & K & K & 4 \Delta
\end{array}\right)\left(\begin{array}{c}
1 \\
c \\
c \\
c_{3}
\end{array}\right)=E_{\operatorname{corr}}\left(\begin{array}{c}
1 \\
c \\
c \\
c_{3}
\end{array}\right)
$$

Solve the equations by taking first the fourth and first rows

$$
\begin{align*}
2 K c+4 \Delta c_{3} & =E_{\mathrm{corr}} c_{3} & c_{3} & =\frac{2 K c}{E_{\mathrm{corr}}-4 \Delta}  \tag{535}\\
2 K c & =E_{\mathrm{corr}} & E_{\mathrm{corr}} & =\frac{E_{\mathrm{corr}}}{E_{\mathrm{corr}}-4 \Delta}
\end{align*}
$$

Using the second row

$$
\begin{equation*}
K+2 \Delta c+K c_{3}=E_{\mathrm{corr}} c \tag{537}
\end{equation*}
$$

and substitution of $c_{3}$

$$
\begin{equation*}
c=\frac{2 K}{E_{\text {corr }}-4 \Delta} \tag{538}
\end{equation*}
$$

which leads to the equation for the correlation energy

$$
\begin{equation*}
E_{\mathrm{corr}}=\frac{2 K^{2}}{E_{\mathrm{corr}}-4 \Delta} \tag{539}
\end{equation*}
$$

and the solution is twice the monomer correlation energy

$$
\begin{equation*}
E_{\mathrm{corr}}=2\left(\Delta-\sqrt{\Delta^{2}+K^{2}}\right) \tag{540}
\end{equation*}
$$

Remark that the coefficient of the quadruple excitation

$$
\begin{equation*}
c_{3}=\frac{2 K c}{E_{\text {corr }}-4 \Delta}=c \times c \tag{541}
\end{equation*}
$$

## 18 Rayleigh-Schroedinger perturbation theory

### 18.1 Schroedinger equation with perturbation

We are looking for the ground state solution of the problem

$$
\begin{equation*}
\hat{H} \psi=\left(\hat{H}_{0}+\hat{V}\right) \psi=E \psi \tag{542}
\end{equation*}
$$

and we already know the (exact) solution of the zero-order problem

$$
\begin{equation*}
\hat{H}_{0} \varphi_{0}=E_{0} \varphi_{0} \tag{543}
\end{equation*}
$$

Let us write $\Delta E=E-E_{0}$, the energy correction

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left(\hat{H}_{0}-E_{0}\right) \psi=(\Delta E-\hat{V}) \psi \tag{544}
\end{equation*}
$$

and in order to fix the phase of $\psi$, impose the intermediate normalization

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left\langle\varphi_{0} \mid \psi\right\rangle=1 \tag{545}
\end{equation*}
$$

Introduce the reduced resolvent operator as

$$
\begin{equation*}
\hat{R}_{0}=\left(1-\left|\varphi_{0}\right\rangle\left\langle\varphi_{0}\right|\right)\left(\hat{H}_{0}-E_{0}\right)^{-1} \tag{546}
\end{equation*}
$$

which can be regarded as the inverse of the operator $\hat{H}_{0}-E_{0}$ in the space of functions orthogonal to $\varphi_{0}$

$$
\begin{equation*}
\hat{R}_{0}\left(\hat{H}_{0}-E_{0}\right)=1-\left|\varphi_{0}\right\rangle\left\langle\varphi_{0}\right| \tag{547}
\end{equation*}
$$

Multiplying the Schrödinger equation by $\hat{R}_{0}$

$$
\begin{equation*}
\hat{R}_{0}\left(\hat{H}_{0}-E_{0}\right) \psi=\hat{R}_{0}(\Delta E-\hat{V}) \psi \tag{548}
\end{equation*}
$$

using the definition of the resolvent and the intermediate normalization an equation is obtained for the wave function

$$
\begin{equation*}
\psi=\varphi_{0}+\hat{R}_{0}(\Delta E-\hat{V}) \psi \tag{549}
\end{equation*}
$$

After multiplication of the Schrödinger equation by $\left\langle\varphi_{0}\right|$

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left\langle\varphi_{0}\right|\left(\hat{H}_{0}-E_{0}\right)|\psi\rangle=\left\langle\varphi_{0}\right|(\Delta E-\hat{V})|\psi\rangle \tag{550}
\end{equation*}
$$

we get the energy correction

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Delta E=\left\langle\varphi_{0}\right| \hat{V}|\psi\rangle \tag{551}
\end{equation*}
$$

### 18.2 Iterative solution of the perturbed Schroedinger equation

These equations can be solved iteratively

$$
\begin{align*}
\Delta E_{n} & =\left\langle\varphi_{0}\right| \hat{V}\left|\psi_{n-1}\right\rangle  \tag{552}\\
\psi_{n} & =\varphi_{0}+\hat{R}_{0}\left(\Delta E_{n}-\hat{V}\right) \psi_{n}
\end{align*}
$$

To the lowest orders of iteration we find by using $\psi_{0}=\varphi_{0}$ and $\hat{R}_{0} \varphi_{0}=0$

$$
\begin{align*}
\Delta E_{1} & =\left\langle\varphi_{0}\right| \hat{V}\left|\psi_{0}\right\rangle \\
\psi_{1} & =\varphi_{0}-\hat{R}_{0} \hat{V} \psi_{0} \\
\Delta E_{2} & =\left\langle\varphi_{0}\right| \hat{V}\left|\psi_{1}\right\rangle=\left\langle\varphi_{0}\right| \hat{V}\left|\psi_{0}\right\rangle-\left\langle\varphi_{0}\right| \hat{V} \hat{R}_{0} \hat{V}\left|\psi_{0}\right\rangle=\Delta E_{1}-\left\langle\varphi_{0}\right| \hat{V} \hat{R}_{0} \hat{V}\left|\psi_{0}\right\rangle \\
\psi_{2} & =\varphi_{0}-\hat{R}_{0}\left(\Delta E_{2}-\hat{V}\right) \psi_{1}  \tag{553}\\
& =\varphi_{0}-\hat{R}_{0}\left(\left\langle\varphi_{0}\right| \hat{V}\left|\psi_{0}\right\rangle-\left\langle\varphi_{0}\right| \hat{V} \hat{R}_{0} \hat{V}\left|\psi_{0}\right\rangle-\hat{V}\right)\left(\varphi_{0}-\hat{R}_{0} \hat{V} \psi_{0}\right) \\
& =\varphi^{(1)}-\hat{R}_{0}\left(\hat{V}-\Delta E_{2}\right) \hat{R}_{0} \hat{V} \varphi_{0}
\end{align*}
$$

## 18.3 $\mathbf{H}$-atom in electric field

Hamiltonian of the H -atom in an electric field, $F_{z}$

$$
\begin{equation*}
\hat{H}=\hat{H}_{0}+\hat{z} F_{z} \quad \text { where } \quad \hat{H}_{0}=-\frac{1}{2} \Delta-\frac{1}{r} \tag{554}
\end{equation*}
$$

The Hamiltonian of the isolated H -atom has
the lowest eigenvalue $E_{0}=-\frac{1}{2}$ and eigenfunction $\varphi_{0}=\frac{1}{\sqrt{\pi}} \mathrm{e}^{-r}$.
First iteration in the energy yields zero

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Delta E_{1}=F_{z}\left\langle\varphi_{0}\right| \hat{z}\left|\psi_{0}\right\rangle=\mu_{z} \cdot F_{z}=0 \tag{555}
\end{equation*}
$$

First iteration in the wave function leads to the equation

$$
\begin{align*}
\psi_{1} & =\varphi_{0}-\hat{R}_{0} \hat{V} \varphi_{0} \\
\left(\hat{H}_{0}-E_{0}\right) \psi_{1} & =-\left(\hat{V}-\Delta E_{1}\right) \varphi_{0} \\
\left(-\frac{1}{2} \Delta-\frac{1}{r}+\frac{1}{2}\right) \psi_{1} & =-\frac{1}{\sqrt{\pi}} F_{z} z \mathrm{e}^{-r} \tag{556}
\end{align*}
$$

which has the solution

$$
\begin{equation*}
\psi_{1}=-\frac{F_{z}}{\sqrt{\pi}} z\left(\frac{r}{2}-1\right) \mathrm{e}^{-r} \tag{557}
\end{equation*}
$$

Second energy iteration

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Delta E_{2}=F_{z}\left\langle\varphi_{0}\right| \hat{z}\left|\psi_{1}\right\rangle=-\frac{9}{4} \cdot F_{z}^{2} \tag{558}
\end{equation*}
$$

This leads to a development of the energy in the powers of $F_{z}$

$$
\begin{equation*}
E=E_{0}+\Delta E_{2}=E_{0}-\frac{9}{4} \cdot F_{z}^{2} \tag{559}
\end{equation*}
$$

the dipole polarizability is

$$
\begin{equation*}
\alpha=-\left(\frac{\partial^{2} E}{\partial F_{z}^{2}}\right)_{F_{z}=0}=\frac{9}{2} \text { a.u. } \tag{560}
\end{equation*}
$$

### 18.4 Rayleigh-Schroedinger perturbation expansion

Assuming that the iteration process converges, the exact wave function and energy can be expanded in power series of a perturbation parameter $\lambda$

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left(\hat{H}_{0}+\lambda \hat{V}\right) \psi=\Delta E \psi \tag{561}
\end{equation*}
$$

as

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Delta E=\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \lambda^{n} \Delta E^{(n)} \quad \text { and } \quad \psi=\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \lambda^{n} \psi^{(n)} \tag{562}
\end{equation*}
$$

Substitute the series expansions in

$$
\Delta E=\left\langle\varphi_{0}\right| \hat{V}|\psi\rangle \quad \text { and } \quad \psi=\varphi_{0}+\hat{R}_{0}(\Delta E-\hat{V}) \psi
$$

leading to

$$
\begin{align*}
\sum_{n=1} \lambda^{n} \Delta E^{(n)} & =\sum_{m=0} \lambda^{m+1}\left\langle\varphi_{0}\right| \hat{V}\left|\psi^{(m)}\right\rangle \\
\sum_{n=1} \lambda^{n} \psi^{(n)} & =\varphi_{0}+\hat{R}_{0}\left(\sum_{m=1} \lambda^{m} \Delta E^{(m)}-\lambda \hat{V}\right) \sum_{k=1} \lambda^{k} \psi^{(k)} \tag{563}
\end{align*}
$$

and collect terms of the same power to obtain the general recursion formulae

$$
\begin{align*}
\Delta E^{(n)} & =\left\langle\varphi_{0}\right| \hat{V}\left|\psi^{(n-1)}\right\rangle \\
\psi^{(n)} & =-\hat{R}_{0} \hat{V} \psi^{(n-1)}-\sum_{k=1}^{n-1} \Delta E^{(k)} \hat{R}_{0} \psi^{(n-k)} \tag{564}
\end{align*}
$$

### 18.5 Explicit formulae at low orders

The reduced resolvent has the spectral resolution

$$
\begin{equation*}
\hat{R}_{0}=\sum_{k \neq 0} \frac{\left|\varphi_{0}\right\rangle\left\langle\varphi_{0}\right|}{E_{k}-E_{0}} \tag{565}
\end{equation*}
$$

- First order

$$
\begin{gather*}
\Delta E^{(1)}=\left\langle\varphi_{0}\right| \hat{V}\left|\varphi_{0}\right\rangle  \tag{566}\\
\psi^{(1)}=-\hat{R}_{0} \hat{V} \varphi_{0}=-\sum_{k \neq 0} \frac{\left\langle\varphi_{k}\right| \hat{V}\left|\varphi_{0}\right\rangle}{E_{k}-E_{0}} \varphi_{k} \tag{567}
\end{gather*}
$$

The wave function corrections are often expressed in terms of the expansion coefficients $c_{k}^{(n)}=$ $\left\langle\varphi_{k} \mid \psi^{(n)}\right\rangle$ on the basis of the eigenfunctions of the zero order Hamiltonian

$$
\begin{equation*}
c_{k}^{(1)}=-\sum_{k \neq 0} \frac{\left\langle\varphi_{k}\right| \hat{V}\left|\varphi_{0}\right\rangle}{E_{k}-E_{0}} \tag{568}
\end{equation*}
$$

- Second order

Energy

$$
\begin{align*}
E^{(2)} & =\left\langle\varphi_{0}\right| \hat{V}\left|\psi^{(1)}\right\rangle=-\left\langle\varphi_{0}\right| \hat{V} \hat{R}_{0} \hat{V}\left|\varphi_{0}\right\rangle \\
& =-\sum_{k \neq 0} \frac{\left\langle\varphi_{0}\right| \hat{V}\left|\varphi_{k}\right\rangle\left\langle\varphi_{k}\right| \hat{V}\left|\varphi_{0}\right\rangle}{E_{k}-E_{0}} \tag{569}
\end{align*}
$$

Wave function

$$
\begin{align*}
\varphi^{(2)}= & \hat{R}_{0} \hat{V} \hat{R}_{0} \hat{V} \psi^{(1)}+\hat{R}_{0} E^{(1)} \hat{R}_{0} \hat{V} \psi^{(0)}= \\
& =\hat{R}_{0} \hat{V} \hat{R}_{0} \hat{V} \varphi_{0}-\hat{R}_{0}\langle\hat{V}\rangle \hat{R}_{0} \hat{V} \varphi_{0}=\hat{R}_{0} \bar{V} \hat{R}_{0} \hat{V} \varphi_{0} \tag{570}
\end{align*}
$$

where we used the definitions

$$
\begin{equation*}
\langle\hat{V}\rangle=\left\langle\varphi_{0}\right| \hat{V}\left|\varphi_{0}\right\rangle \quad \text { and } \quad \bar{V}=\hat{V}-\langle\hat{V}\rangle \tag{571}
\end{equation*}
$$

- Third order

$$
\begin{align*}
\Delta E^{(3)} & =\left\langle\varphi_{0}\right| \hat{V}\left|\psi^{(2)}\right\rangle=-\left\langle\varphi_{0}\right| \hat{V} \hat{R}_{0} \bar{V} \hat{R}_{0} \hat{V}\left|\varphi_{0}\right\rangle \\
& =\sum_{k \neq 0} \sum_{l \neq 0} \frac{\left\langle\varphi_{0}\right| \hat{V}\left|\varphi_{k}\right\rangle\left\langle\varphi_{k}\right| \bar{V}\left|\varphi_{l}\right\rangle\left\langle\varphi_{l}\right| \hat{V}\left|\varphi_{0}\right\rangle}{\left(E_{k}-E_{0}\right)\left(E_{l}-E_{0}\right)} \tag{572}
\end{align*}
$$

## Summary of energy corrections

$$
\begin{align*}
\Delta E^{(1)} & =\langle\hat{V}\rangle  \tag{573}\\
\Delta E^{(2)} & =\left\langle\hat{V} \hat{R}_{0} \hat{V}\right\rangle  \tag{574}\\
\Delta E^{(3)} & =\left\langle\hat{V} \hat{R}_{0} \bar{V} \hat{R}_{0} \hat{V}\right\rangle  \tag{575}\\
\Delta E^{(4)} & =\left\langle\hat{V} \hat{R}_{0}\left(\bar{V} \hat{R}_{0} \bar{V}-\left\langle\bar{V} \hat{R}_{0} \bar{V}\right\rangle\right) \hat{R}_{0} \hat{V}\right\rangle  \tag{576}\\
\Delta E^{(5)} & =\left\langle\hat { V } \hat { R } _ { 0 } \left(\bar{V} \hat{R}_{0} \bar{V} \hat{R}_{0} \bar{V}-\left\langle\bar{V} \hat{R}_{0} \bar{V} \hat{R}_{0} \bar{V}\right\rangle\right.\right. \\
& \left.\left.\quad-\bar{V} \hat{R}_{0}\left\langle\bar{V} \hat{R}_{0} \bar{V}\right\rangle-\left\langle\bar{V} \hat{R}_{0} \bar{V}\right\rangle \hat{R}_{0} \bar{V}\right) \hat{R}_{0} \hat{V}\right\rangle \tag{577}
\end{align*}
$$

### 18.6 Energy with the first-order wave function

The energy (Rayleigh quotient)

$$
\begin{equation*}
E=\frac{\langle\psi| \hat{H}+\lambda \hat{V}|\psi\rangle}{\langle\psi \mid \psi\rangle} \tag{578}
\end{equation*}
$$

with the first order wave function, $\psi=\varphi_{0}+\lambda \psi^{(1)}=\varphi_{0}-\lambda \hat{V} \hat{R}_{0} \varphi_{0}$

$$
\begin{equation*}
E=\frac{\left\langle\varphi_{0}-\lambda \varphi_{0} \hat{V} \hat{R}_{0}\right| \hat{H}+\lambda \hat{V}\left|\varphi_{0}-\lambda \hat{V} \hat{R}_{0} \varphi_{0}\right\rangle}{1+\lambda^{2}\left\langle\varphi_{0} \hat{V} \hat{R}_{0} \mid \hat{R}_{0} \hat{V} \varphi_{0}\right\rangle} \tag{579}
\end{equation*}
$$

After expanding the denominator and using that $\hat{R}_{0} \hat{H}_{0} \varphi_{0}=0$

$$
\begin{align*}
E=\left(E_{0}\right. & +\lambda E^{(1)}-2 \lambda^{2}\left\langle\varphi_{0}\right| \hat{V} \hat{R}_{0} \hat{V}\left|\varphi_{0}\right\rangle+ \\
& \left.+\lambda^{2}\left\langle\varphi_{0}\right| \hat{V} \hat{R}_{0}(\hat{H}+\lambda \hat{V}) \hat{R}_{0} \hat{V}\left|\varphi_{0}\right\rangle\right) \times  \tag{580}\\
& \times\left(1-\lambda^{2}\left\langle\varphi_{0} \hat{V} \hat{R}_{0} \mid \hat{R}_{0} \hat{V} \varphi_{0}\right\rangle\right)
\end{align*}
$$

and collecting terms of the same order

$$
\begin{align*}
E=E_{0} & +\lambda E^{(1)}- \\
& -\lambda^{2} 2\left\langle\varphi_{0}\right| \hat{V} \hat{R}_{0} \hat{V}\left|\varphi_{0}\right\rangle- \\
& -\lambda^{2}\left\langle\varphi_{0}\right| \hat{V} \hat{R}_{0}\left(\hat{H}-E_{0}\right) \hat{R}_{0} \hat{V}\left|\varphi_{0}\right\rangle  \tag{581}\\
& +\lambda^{3}\left\langle\varphi_{0}\right| \hat{V} \hat{R}_{0}\left(\hat{V}-E^{(1)}\right) \hat{R}_{0} \hat{V}\left|\varphi_{0}\right\rangle
\end{align*}
$$

Use that $E^{(1)}=\langle\hat{V}\rangle$ and $\hat{R}_{0}\left(\hat{H}-E_{0}\right)=1-\left|\varphi_{0}\right\rangle\left\langle\varphi_{0}\right|$ and obtain the previously derived 3rd order energy expression

$$
\begin{equation*}
E=E_{0}+\left\langle\varphi_{0}\right| \hat{V}\left|\varphi_{0}\right\rangle-\left\langle\varphi_{0}\right| \hat{V} \hat{R}_{0} \hat{V}\left|\varphi_{0}\right\rangle+\left\langle\varphi_{0}\right| \hat{V} \hat{R}_{0}(\hat{V}-\langle\hat{V}\rangle) \hat{R}_{0} \hat{V}\left|\varphi_{0}\right\rangle \tag{582}
\end{equation*}
$$

This result can be generalized: the $n$th order wave function determines the ( $2 \mathrm{n}-1$ )th order energy expression, provided the normalization is taken into account.
The perturbational energy is not a upper bound to the exact energy, but the Rayleigh-quotient is an upper bound.

### 18.7 Deformation energy and perturbation energy

Up to second order the Rayleigh quotient can be written as a sum of two terms, the expectation value of the zero order Hamiltonian

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{\left\langle\varphi-\lambda \varphi \hat{V} \hat{R}_{0}\right| \hat{H}\left|\varphi-\lambda \hat{V} \hat{R}_{0} \varphi\right\rangle}{1+\lambda^{2}\left\langle\varphi \hat{V} \hat{R}_{0} \mid \hat{R}_{0} \hat{V} \varphi\right\rangle}=E_{0}+\lambda^{2}\langle\varphi| \hat{V} \hat{R}_{0} \hat{V}|\varphi\rangle=E_{0}+\Delta E_{\mathrm{def}}^{(2)} \tag{583}
\end{equation*}
$$

and the expectation value of the perturbation operator

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{\left\langle\varphi-\lambda \varphi \hat{V} \hat{R}_{0}\right| \lambda \hat{V}\left|\varphi-\lambda \hat{V} \hat{R}_{0} \varphi\right\rangle}{1+\lambda^{2}\left\langle\varphi \hat{V} \hat{R}_{0} \mid \hat{R}_{0} \hat{V} \varphi\right\rangle}=\lambda\langle\varphi| \hat{V}|\varphi\rangle-\lambda^{2} 2\langle\varphi| \hat{V} \hat{R}_{0} \hat{V}|\varphi\rangle=E^{(1)}+\Delta E_{\mathrm{stab}}^{(2)} \tag{584}
\end{equation*}
$$

The second order correction to the expectation value of the perturbation is twice the second order energy correction and it is twice the energy raise of the wave function due to the deformation of the wave function.

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Delta E_{\mathrm{stab}}^{(2)}=-2 \Delta E_{\mathrm{def}}^{(2)} \tag{585}
\end{equation*}
$$

### 18.8 Dalgarno's ( $\mathbf{2 n + 1}$ ) theorem

Although the recursion formulae would suggest that we need the $(n-1)$ order wave function correction to calculate the $n$-th order energy correction, as the previous example showed, there is a much stronger statement:
In order to obtain the $(2 n+1)$ order energy correction, it is sufficient to know the $n$-th order wave function correction.
Wave function

$$
\begin{equation*}
\psi=\sum_{k}^{n} \psi^{(k)}+\mathcal{O}\left(\lambda^{n+1}\right) \tag{586}
\end{equation*}
$$

Energy

$$
\begin{equation*}
E=\sum_{k}^{n} \sum_{l}^{n}\left\langle\psi^{(k)}\right| \hat{H}\left|\psi^{(l)}\right\rangle+\mathcal{O}\left(\lambda^{2 n+2}\right) \tag{587}
\end{equation*}
$$

Transformation formulae (Löwdin)

$$
\begin{align*}
\Delta E^{(2 n)} & =\left\langle\varphi_{0}\right| \hat{V}\left|\psi^{(2 n-1)}\right\rangle \\
& =\left\langle\psi^{(n)}\right| \hat{V}\left|\psi^{(n-1)}\right\rangle-\sum_{k=1}^{n} \sum_{l=1}^{n} \Delta E^{(2 n-k-l)}\left\langle\psi^{(k)} \mid \psi^{(l)}\right\rangle  \tag{588}\\
\Delta E^{(2 n+1)} & =\left\langle\varphi_{0}\right| \hat{V}\left|\psi^{(2 n)}\right\rangle \\
& =\left\langle\psi^{(n)}\right| \hat{V}\left|\psi^{(n)}\right\rangle-\sum_{k=1}^{n} \sum_{l=1}^{n} \Delta E^{(2 n+1-k-l)}\left\langle\psi^{(k)} \mid \psi^{(l)}\right\rangle \tag{589}
\end{align*}
$$

Computational difficulties increase significantly at $2 n$ orders.

### 18.9 Pertubational correction of expectation values

Expectation value of an arbitrary Hermitian operator, $\hat{B}$ with a first order wave function $\psi \approx$ $\left(1+\hat{R}_{0} \hat{V}\right) \varphi$

$$
\begin{equation*}
\bar{B}=\frac{\left\langle\varphi-\lambda \varphi \hat{V} \hat{R}_{0}\right| \hat{B}+\lambda \hat{V}\left|\varphi-\lambda \hat{V} \hat{R}_{0} \varphi\right\rangle}{1+\lambda^{2}\left\langle\varphi \hat{V} \hat{R}_{0} \mid \hat{R}_{0} \hat{V} \varphi\right\rangle} \tag{590}
\end{equation*}
$$

Expanding up to first order in the perturbation

$$
\begin{equation*}
\langle\varphi| \hat{B}+\hat{B} \hat{R}_{0} \hat{V}+\hat{V} \hat{R}_{0} \hat{B}+\hat{V} \hat{R}_{0}\left(\hat{B}-B_{0}\right) \hat{R}_{0} \hat{V}|\varphi\rangle=B_{0}+\Delta B^{(1)} \tag{591}
\end{equation*}
$$

Suppose that the perturbation is of the form $\hat{V}=\boldsymbol{a} \hat{A}=\hat{A} \boldsymbol{a}^{\dagger}$, then

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Delta B^{(1)}=\boldsymbol{a}^{\dagger}\left\langle\hat{A} \hat{R}_{0} \hat{B}+\hat{B} \hat{R}_{0} \hat{A}\right\rangle \boldsymbol{a}=\boldsymbol{a}^{\dagger} K(\hat{A} \hat{B}) \boldsymbol{a} \tag{592}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $K(\hat{A} \hat{B})=\left\langle\hat{A} \hat{R}_{0} \hat{B}+\hat{B} \hat{R}_{0} \hat{A}\right\rangle$ is the linear response function.

### 18.10 Partitioning method

Let us consider an orthonormal basis $\left\{\varphi_{k}\right\}$ divided into two subsets, A and B , containing $n_{A}$ and $n_{B}$ functions, respectively. The result, obtained by using only $n_{A}$ functions can be improved by adding the $n_{B}$ extra functions, i.e. the secular equations are partitioned as

$$
\left(\begin{array}{ll}
\boldsymbol{H}^{A A} & \boldsymbol{H}^{A B}  \tag{593}\\
\boldsymbol{H}^{B A} & \boldsymbol{H}^{B B}
\end{array}\right)\binom{c^{A}}{\boldsymbol{c}^{B}}=E\binom{c^{A}}{\boldsymbol{c}^{B}}
$$

which is equivalent to the system of equations

$$
\begin{align*}
& \boldsymbol{H}^{A A} \boldsymbol{c}^{A}+\boldsymbol{H}^{A B} \boldsymbol{c}^{B}=E \boldsymbol{c}^{A} \\
& \boldsymbol{H}^{B A} \boldsymbol{c}^{A}+\boldsymbol{H}^{B B} \boldsymbol{c}^{B}=E \boldsymbol{c}^{B} \tag{594}
\end{align*}
$$

A formal solution can be obtained by expressing $\boldsymbol{c}^{B}$ from the second equation

$$
\begin{equation*}
\boldsymbol{c}^{B}=\left(E \mathbf{1}_{B B}-\boldsymbol{H}^{B B}\right)^{-1} \boldsymbol{H}^{B A} \boldsymbol{c}^{A} \tag{595}
\end{equation*}
$$

and inserting it into the first one leading to

$$
\begin{equation*}
\boldsymbol{H}_{\mathrm{eff}} \boldsymbol{c}^{A}=E \boldsymbol{c}^{A} \tag{596}
\end{equation*}
$$

The effective Hamiltonian is an $n_{A} \times n_{A}$ matrix

$$
\begin{equation*}
\boldsymbol{H}_{\mathrm{eff}}=\boldsymbol{H}^{A A}+\boldsymbol{H}^{A B}\left(E \mathbf{1}_{B B}-\boldsymbol{H}^{B B}\right)^{-1} \boldsymbol{H}^{B A} \tag{597}
\end{equation*}
$$

including implicitly the effect of the $n_{B}$ other functions. The effective Hamiltonian depends on the yet unknown energy, $E$, therefore the solution should be obtained by iteration.
Take the case $n_{A}=1, \boldsymbol{c}_{A}=\boldsymbol{c}_{1}=1$, then $\boldsymbol{H}_{\text {eff }}$ is just a single element

$$
\begin{equation*}
E=\boldsymbol{H}_{\mathrm{eff}}=f(E) \tag{598}
\end{equation*}
$$

Insert as a first approximation $E=H_{11}$ and expand the inverse matrix, using $(\boldsymbol{I}+\boldsymbol{\Delta})^{-1}=$ $\boldsymbol{I}-\boldsymbol{\Delta}+\boldsymbol{\Delta}^{2}$ leading to second order in the off-diagonal elements

$$
\begin{equation*}
E=H_{11}+\sum_{\kappa>1} \frac{H_{1 \kappa} H_{k 1}}{H_{11}-H_{\kappa \kappa}} \quad(\kappa>1) \tag{599}
\end{equation*}
$$

The expansion coefficients in the $\boldsymbol{c}^{B}$ vector (c.f. above)

$$
\begin{equation*}
\boldsymbol{c}^{B}=\left(E \mathbf{1}_{B B}-\boldsymbol{H}^{B B}\right)^{-1} \boldsymbol{H}^{B A} \boldsymbol{c}^{A} \tag{600}
\end{equation*}
$$

can be approximated similarly as

$$
\begin{equation*}
c_{\kappa}=\frac{H_{\kappa 1}}{H_{11}-H_{\kappa \kappa}} \tag{601}
\end{equation*}
$$

Analogous to RSPT, but

- basis is finite
- no a priori separation of the Hamiltonian is necessary
- complete set of eigenfunctions not needed
- analogies with RSPT to handled with caution

To make the connection with RSPT clear, choose the eigenfunctions of $\hat{H}_{0}$ as basis

$$
\begin{equation*}
\hat{H}_{0} \varphi_{k}=E_{k}^{(0)} \varphi_{k} \tag{602}
\end{equation*}
$$

and the relevant matrix elements are

$$
\begin{align*}
& H_{11}=\left\langle\varphi_{1}\right| \hat{H}_{0}+\hat{V}\left|\varphi_{1}\right\rangle=E_{1}^{(0)}+\left\langle\varphi_{1}\right| \hat{V}\left|\varphi_{1}\right\rangle  \tag{603}\\
& H_{1 k}=\left\langle\varphi_{1}\right| \hat{H}_{0}+\hat{V}\left|\varphi_{k}\right\rangle=\left\langle\varphi_{1}\right| \hat{V}\left|\varphi_{k}\right\rangle \tag{604}
\end{align*}
$$

By application of the previously derived results we obtain for the perturbational corrections to the $i$-th state

$$
\begin{align*}
E_{i} & =E_{i}^{(0)}+\left\langle\varphi_{i}\right| \hat{V}\left|\varphi_{i}\right\rangle+\sum_{k(\neq i)} \frac{\left\langle\varphi_{i}\right| \hat{V}\left|\varphi_{k}\right\rangle\left\langle\varphi_{k}\right| \hat{V}\left|\varphi_{i}\right\rangle}{E_{i}^{(0)}-E_{k}^{(0)}}  \tag{605}\\
\psi_{i} & =\varphi_{i}+\sum_{k(\neq i)} c_{i k} \varphi_{k}=\varphi_{i}-\sum_{k(\neq i)} \frac{\left\langle\varphi_{k}\right| \hat{V}\left|\varphi_{i}\right\rangle}{E_{i}^{(0)}-E_{k}^{(0)}} \varphi_{k} \tag{606}
\end{align*}
$$

(Quasi)-degenerate cases can be handled by taking $\left(n_{A}>1\right)$.

In non-orthogonal basis sets the matrix equations are

$$
\left(\begin{array}{ll}
\boldsymbol{H}^{A A} & \boldsymbol{H}^{A B}  \tag{607}\\
\boldsymbol{H}^{B A} & \boldsymbol{H}^{B B}
\end{array}\right)\binom{\boldsymbol{c}^{A}}{\boldsymbol{c}^{B}}=E\left(\begin{array}{ll}
\boldsymbol{M}^{A A} & \boldsymbol{M}^{A B} \\
\boldsymbol{M}^{B A} & \boldsymbol{M}^{B B}
\end{array}\right)\binom{\boldsymbol{c}^{A}}{\boldsymbol{c}^{B}}
$$

where $\boldsymbol{M}$ is the overlap (metric) matrix of the basis. The effective equation is

$$
\begin{equation*}
\boldsymbol{H}_{\mathrm{eff}} \boldsymbol{c}^{A}=E \boldsymbol{M}^{A A} \boldsymbol{c}^{A} \tag{608}
\end{equation*}
$$

with the effective Hamiltonian

$$
\begin{equation*}
\boldsymbol{H}^{A A}+\left(\boldsymbol{H}^{A B}-E \boldsymbol{M}^{A B}\right)\left(E \mathbf{1}_{B B}-\boldsymbol{H}^{B B}\right)^{-1}\left(\boldsymbol{H}^{B A}-E \boldsymbol{M}^{B A}\right) \tag{609}
\end{equation*}
$$

and the energy to second order is

$$
\begin{equation*}
E=\frac{H_{00}}{M_{00}}+\sum_{k} \frac{\left[H_{k 0}-M_{k 0}\left(H_{00} / M_{00}\right)\right]^{2}}{\left[H_{00} / M_{00}-\left(H_{k k} / M_{k k}\right)\right]} \tag{610}
\end{equation*}
$$

## 19 RSPT treatment of intramolecular correlation

Let us separate the N-electron Hamiltonian into two parts

$$
\begin{equation*}
\hat{H}=\hat{H}_{0}+\hat{W} \tag{611}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\hat{H}_{0}$ is the Hartree-Fock Hamiltonian

$$
\begin{equation*}
\hat{H}_{0}=\sum_{i} \hat{F}(i) \tag{612}
\end{equation*}
$$

and the perturbation is the difference between the HF and total Hamiltonians

$$
\begin{equation*}
\hat{W}=\hat{H}-\sum_{i} \hat{F}(i)=\sum_{i<j} \frac{1}{r_{i j}}-\sum_{i} \hat{J}(i)-\hat{K}(i) \tag{613}
\end{equation*}
$$

which often called the fluctuation potential.
The zero order wave function is the Hartree-Fock determinant.
The zero order energy is the sum of occupied orbital energies

$$
\begin{equation*}
E^{(0)}=\langle\Psi| \sum_{i} \hat{F}(i)|\Psi\rangle=\sum_{a}^{N} \varepsilon_{a} \tag{614}
\end{equation*}
$$

The first order energy correction is just the "double counting correction" we discussed in the Hartree-Fock theory

$$
\begin{equation*}
E^{(1)}=\langle\Psi| \hat{W}|\Psi\rangle=\sum_{a<b}\langle a b \| a b\rangle-\sum_{a} \sum_{b}\left(J_{a b}-K_{a b}\right)=-\sum_{a<b}\langle a b \| a b\rangle \tag{615}
\end{equation*}
$$

The Hartree-Fock energy is

$$
\begin{equation*}
E_{0}=E^{(0)}+E^{(1)}=\sum_{a}^{N} \varepsilon_{a}-\frac{1}{2} \sum_{a}^{N} \sum_{b}^{N}\langle a b \| a b\rangle \tag{616}
\end{equation*}
$$

In order to apply the second order energy and first order wave function correction formulae, the "intermediate states", $\varphi_{k}$ should be identified $\Rightarrow$ excited determinants formed from the complete set of eigenfunctions of $\hat{F}$.

- singly excited determinants

$$
\begin{equation*}
\langle\Psi| \hat{W}\left|\Psi_{a}^{r}\right\rangle=\langle\Psi| \hat{H}-\hat{H}_{0}\left|\Psi_{a}^{r}\right\rangle=\langle\Psi| \hat{H}\left|\Psi_{a}^{r}\right\rangle-F_{a r}=0 \tag{617}
\end{equation*}
$$

they cannot contribute by the virtue of the Brillouin theorem and HF equations.

- triply (and higher) excited determinants do not contribute - Slater rules
- double excitations, $\left|\Psi_{a b}^{r s}\right\rangle$ - yes

Application of the general formula leads to

$$
\begin{equation*}
E^{(2)}=-\sum_{\substack{a<b \\ r<s}} \frac{\langle\Psi| \hat{W}\left|\Psi_{a b}^{r s}\right\rangle\left\langle\Psi_{a b}^{r s}\right| \hat{W}|\Psi\rangle}{\left\langle\Psi_{a b}^{r s}\right| H_{0}-E^{(0)}\left|\Psi_{a b}^{r s}\right\rangle} \tag{618}
\end{equation*}
$$

Let us use that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left\langle\Psi_{a b}^{r s}\right| \hat{H}_{0}-E^{(0)}\left|\Psi_{a b}^{r s}\right\rangle=-\left(\varepsilon_{a}+\varepsilon_{b}-\varepsilon_{r}-\varepsilon_{s}\right) \tag{619}
\end{equation*}
$$

and the Slater rules

$$
\begin{equation*}
\langle\Psi| \hat{W}\left|\Psi_{a b}^{r s}\right\rangle=\langle\Psi| \sum_{i<j} \frac{1}{r_{i j}}\left|\Psi_{a b}^{r s}\right\rangle=\langle a b||r s\rangle \tag{620}
\end{equation*}
$$

we end up the second order Møller-Plesset (or MBPT) correction

$$
\begin{equation*}
E^{(2)}=\sum_{\substack{a<b \\ r<s}} \frac{|\langle a b|| r s\rangle\left.\right|^{2}}{\varepsilon_{a}+\varepsilon_{b}-\varepsilon_{r}-\varepsilon_{s}}=\frac{1}{4} \sum_{a b r s} \frac{|\langle a b|| r s\rangle\left.\right|^{2}}{\varepsilon_{a}+\varepsilon_{b}-\varepsilon_{r}-\varepsilon_{s}} \tag{621}
\end{equation*}
$$

In terms of the regular integrals the second order energy

$$
\begin{equation*}
E^{(2)}=\frac{1}{2} \sum_{a b r s} \frac{\langle a b \mid r s\rangle\langle r s \mid a b\rangle}{\varepsilon_{a}+\varepsilon_{b}-\varepsilon_{r}-\varepsilon_{s}}-\frac{1}{2} \sum_{a b r s} \frac{\langle a b \mid r s\rangle\langle r s \mid b a\rangle}{\varepsilon_{a}+\varepsilon_{b}-\varepsilon_{r}-\varepsilon_{s}} \tag{622}
\end{equation*}
$$

and for closed shells in terms of spatial orbitals

$$
\begin{equation*}
E^{(2)}=2 \sum_{a b r s}^{N / 2} \frac{\langle a b \mid r s\rangle\langle r s \mid a b\rangle}{\varepsilon_{a}+\varepsilon_{b}-\varepsilon_{r}-\varepsilon_{s}}-\sum_{a b r s}^{N / 2} \frac{\langle a b \mid r s\rangle\langle r s \mid b a\rangle}{\varepsilon_{a}+\varepsilon_{b}-\varepsilon_{r}-\varepsilon_{s}} \tag{623}
\end{equation*}
$$

### 19.1 Third order MBPT energy

The third order energy expression is more laborious

$$
\begin{align*}
E^{(3)}= & \frac{1}{8} \sum_{a b c d r s} \frac{\langle a b \| \mid r s\rangle\langle c d \| \mid a b\rangle\langle r s \| \mid c d\rangle}{\left(\varepsilon_{a}+\varepsilon_{b}-\varepsilon_{r}-\varepsilon_{s}\right)\left(\varepsilon_{c}+\varepsilon_{d}-\varepsilon_{r}-\varepsilon_{s}\right)} \\
& +\frac{1}{8} \sum_{a b r s t u} \frac{\langle a b \| \mid r s\rangle\langle r s||t u\rangle\langle t u||a b\rangle}{\left(\varepsilon_{a}+\varepsilon_{b}-\varepsilon_{r}-\varepsilon_{s}\right)\left(\varepsilon_{a}+\varepsilon_{b}-\varepsilon_{t}-\varepsilon_{u}\right)}  \tag{624}\\
& +\sum_{a b c r s t} \frac{\langle a b \| r s\rangle\langle c s \| t b\rangle\langle r t||a c\rangle}{\left(\varepsilon_{a}+\varepsilon_{b}-\varepsilon_{r}-\varepsilon_{s}\right)\left(\varepsilon_{a}+\varepsilon_{c}-\varepsilon_{r}-\varepsilon_{t}\right)}
\end{align*}
$$

### 19.2 Comparison with the partitioning method

We have already seen (c.f. discussion of the CI method) that the DCI correlation energy can be obtained from the following matrix

$$
\left(\begin{array}{cccc}
\langle\Psi| \hat{H}_{0}+\hat{W}|\Psi\rangle & \langle\Psi| \hat{W}\left|\Psi_{a b}^{r s}\right\rangle & \ldots & \langle\Psi| \hat{W}\left|\Psi_{c d}^{t u}\right\rangle  \tag{625}\\
\left\langle\Psi_{a b}^{r s}\right| \hat{W}|\Psi\rangle & \left\langle\Psi_{a b}^{r s}\right| \hat{H}_{0}+\hat{W}\left|\Psi_{a b}^{r s}\right\rangle & \ldots & \left\langle\Psi_{a b}^{r s}\right| \hat{W}\left|\Psi_{c d}^{t u}\right\rangle \\
\ldots & \ldots & \ldots & \ldots \\
\left\langle\Psi_{c d}^{t u}\right| \hat{W}|\Psi\rangle & \left\langle\Psi_{c d}^{t u}\right| \hat{W}\left|\Psi_{a b}^{r s}\right\rangle & \ldots & \left\langle\Psi_{c d}^{t u}\right| \hat{H}_{0}+\hat{W}\left|\Psi_{c d}^{t u}\right\rangle
\end{array}\right)
$$

where we used the notations

$$
\left(\begin{array}{cc}
\langle\Psi| \hat{H}_{0}+\hat{W}|\Psi\rangle & \boldsymbol{B}_{a b r s}  \tag{626}\\
\boldsymbol{B}_{a b r s}^{\dagger} & \boldsymbol{D}_{a b r s, c d t u}
\end{array}\right)
$$

and the correlation energy is

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Delta E=\sum_{a b r s} \sum_{c d t u} \boldsymbol{B}_{a b r s}^{\dagger}\left(\boldsymbol{D}_{a b r s, c d t u}\right)^{-1} \boldsymbol{B}_{a b r s} \tag{627}
\end{equation*}
$$

Decompose the $\boldsymbol{D}_{a b r s, c d t u}$ matrix $\boldsymbol{D}=\boldsymbol{K}+\boldsymbol{W}$, i.e. as a sum of a diagonal $(\boldsymbol{K})$ and non-diagonal $(\boldsymbol{W})$ contribution and expand the inverse matrix

$$
\begin{align*}
D^{-1} & =(K+W)^{-1}=\left[K\left(1+K^{-1} W\right)\right]^{-1} \\
& =\left(1+K^{-1} W\right)^{-1} K^{-1}=K^{-1}-K^{-1} W K^{-1}+K^{-1} W K^{-1} W K^{-1} \ldots \tag{628}
\end{align*}
$$

Since the inverse of the diagonal matrix $K_{a b}^{r s}$ is trivial, the approximate correlation energy has the form

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Delta E=\sum_{a b r s} \boldsymbol{B}_{a b r s}^{\dagger}\left(\boldsymbol{K}_{a b}^{r s}\right)^{-1} \boldsymbol{B}_{a b r s} \tag{629}
\end{equation*}
$$

Two possible choices for the partition

- Møeller-Plesset partition

$$
\begin{equation*}
\boldsymbol{K}_{a b}^{r s}(\mathrm{MP})=\left\langle\Psi_{a b}^{r s}\right| \hat{H}_{0}\left|\Psi_{a b}^{r s}\right\rangle=E^{(0)}-\left(\varepsilon_{a}+\varepsilon_{b}-\varepsilon_{r}-\varepsilon_{s}\right) \tag{630}
\end{equation*}
$$

leading to the MP2 result

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Delta E(\mathrm{MP} 2)=\frac{1}{4} \sum_{a b r s} \frac{\boldsymbol{B}_{a b r s}^{\dagger} \boldsymbol{B}_{a b r s}}{\varepsilon_{a}+\varepsilon_{b}-\varepsilon_{r}-\varepsilon_{s}} \tag{631}
\end{equation*}
$$

- Epstein-Nesbet partitioning

$$
\begin{equation*}
\boldsymbol{K}_{a b}^{r s}(\mathrm{EN})=\left\langle\Psi_{a b}^{r s}\right| \hat{H}_{0}+\hat{W}\left|\Psi_{a b}^{r s}\right\rangle=\boldsymbol{K}_{a b}^{r s}(\mathrm{MP})-d_{a b}^{r s} \tag{632}
\end{equation*}
$$

leading to

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Delta E(\mathrm{EN})=\frac{1}{4} \sum_{a b r s} \sum_{c d t u} \frac{\boldsymbol{B}_{a b r s}^{\dagger} \boldsymbol{B}_{a b r s}}{\left(\varepsilon_{a}+\varepsilon_{b}-\varepsilon_{r}-\varepsilon_{s}\right)-d_{a b}^{r s}} \tag{633}
\end{equation*}
$$

which is the result obtained previously as an approximate correlation energy expression.

### 19.3 Partial summation of MBPT series

Second order correction

$$
\begin{equation*}
E(2)=\frac{1}{4} \sum_{a b r s}\langle a b \| r s\rangle\langle r s \| a b\rangle\left(K_{a b}^{r s}\right)^{-1} \tag{634}
\end{equation*}
$$

A component of the third order correction

$$
\begin{equation*}
E(3)=\frac{1}{4} \sum_{a b r s}\langle a b \| r s\rangle d_{a b}^{r s}\langle r s \| a b\rangle\left(K_{a b}^{r s}\right)^{-1} \tag{635}
\end{equation*}
$$

where

$$
\begin{equation*}
d_{a b}^{r s}=\langle a b \| a b\rangle+\langle r s \| r s\rangle-\langle a r \| a r\rangle-\langle b r \| b r\rangle-\langle a s \| a s\rangle-\langle b s \| b s\rangle \tag{636}
\end{equation*}
$$

Similar terms come in fourth-, fifth-, etc. order

$$
\begin{align*}
E(2)+E(3)+\ldots & =\frac{1}{4} \sum_{a b r s} K^{-1}\langle a b||r s\rangle\langle r s \| a b\rangle\left[1+\left(\frac{d}{K}\right)+\left(\frac{d}{K}\right)^{2}+\ldots\right]  \tag{637}\\
& =\frac{1}{4} \sum_{a b r s} \frac{\langle a b \| r s\rangle\langle r s \| a b\rangle}{K(1-d / K)}
\end{align*}
$$

We obtain by partial summation the Epstein-Nesbet result.

### 19.4 MBPT correlation energy of minimal basis $\mathbf{H}_{2}$

The exact correlation energy was found for this system as

$$
\begin{equation*}
E_{\text {corr }}=\Delta-\left(\Delta^{2}+K_{12}^{2}\right)^{1 / 2} \tag{638}
\end{equation*}
$$

with

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Delta=2\left(\varepsilon_{2}-\varepsilon_{1}\right)+J_{11}+J_{22}-4 J_{12}+2 K_{12} \tag{639}
\end{equation*}
$$

We can apply directly the formulae by considering that $a=b=1$ and $r=s=2$. Second order

$$
\begin{equation*}
E^{(2)}=2 \frac{\langle 11 \mid 22\rangle\langle 22 \mid 11\rangle}{2\left(\varepsilon_{1}-\varepsilon_{2}\right)}-\frac{\langle 11 \mid 22\rangle\langle 22 \mid 11\rangle}{2\left(\varepsilon_{1}-\varepsilon_{2}\right)}=\frac{K_{12}^{2}}{2\left(\varepsilon_{1}-\varepsilon_{2}\right)} \tag{640}
\end{equation*}
$$

The third order result can be obtained from the general formula by taking into account that the first order energy correction

$$
\begin{equation*}
E^{(1)}=\langle\Psi| \hat{W}|\Psi\rangle=-J_{11} \tag{641}
\end{equation*}
$$

and the perturbation matrix element

$$
\begin{equation*}
\langle\Psi| \hat{W}\left|\Psi_{1 \overline{1}}^{2 \overline{2}}\right\rangle=\langle 1 \overline{1}||2 \overline{2}\rangle=\langle 11 \mid 22\rangle=K_{12} \tag{642}
\end{equation*}
$$

Third order energy

$$
\begin{equation*}
E^{(3)}=\frac{K_{12}^{2}\left(J_{11}+J_{22}-4 J_{12}+2 K_{12}\right)}{4\left(\varepsilon_{1}-\varepsilon_{2}\right)} \tag{643}
\end{equation*}
$$



### 19.5 Size-consistency

N -mer of non-interacting $\mathrm{H}_{2}$ molecules
Second order energy

$$
\begin{equation*}
E^{(2)}=\sum_{i=1}^{N} \frac{\left.|\langle\Psi| \hat{W}| \Psi_{1_{i} \overline{1}_{i}}^{2_{i} \overline{2}_{i}}\right\rangle\left.\right|^{2}}{2\left(\varepsilon_{1}-\varepsilon_{2}\right)}=\frac{N K_{12}^{2}}{2\left(\varepsilon_{1}-\varepsilon_{2}\right)} \tag{644}
\end{equation*}
$$

is N times the monomer MP2 energy.
Third order energy correction

$$
\begin{equation*}
E^{(3)}=\frac{N K_{12}^{2}\left(J_{11}+J_{22}-4 J_{12}+2 K_{12}\right)}{4\left(\varepsilon_{1}-\varepsilon_{2}\right)^{2}} \tag{645}
\end{equation*}
$$

The general result is true: the MPn energy correction is size-consistent.

### 19.6 Size-consistent methods

The size consistency can be qualitatively discussed by invoking the one- and two-particle excitation operators

$$
\begin{equation*}
\hat{T}_{1}=\sum_{a r} T_{a}^{r} a_{r}^{+} a_{a} \quad \hat{T}_{2}=\sum_{a b r s} T_{a b}^{r s} a_{r}^{+} a_{s}^{+} a_{b} a_{a} \tag{646}
\end{equation*}
$$

- SDCI wave function of a complex

$$
\left(1+\hat{T}_{1}^{A}+\hat{T}_{2}^{A}\right)\left|\Psi^{A}\right\rangle\left(1+\hat{T}_{1}^{B}+\hat{T}_{2}^{B}\right)\left|\Psi^{B}\right\rangle=\left|\Psi^{A B}(S D C I)\right\rangle+\left(\hat{T}_{1}^{A} \hat{T}_{2}^{B}+\ldots\right)\left|\Psi^{A} \Psi^{B}\right\rangle
$$

which is not of SCDI form

- coupled cluster wave functions (CCSD) of a complex

$$
\exp \left(\hat{T}_{1}^{A}+\hat{T}_{2}^{A}\right)\left|\Psi^{A}\right\rangle \exp \left(\hat{T}_{1}^{B}+\hat{T}_{2}^{B}\right)\left|\Psi^{B}\right\rangle \quad=\quad \exp \left(\hat{T}_{1}^{A}+\hat{T}_{1}^{B}+\hat{T}_{2}^{A}+\hat{T}_{2}^{B}\right)\left|\Psi^{A} \Psi^{B}\right\rangle
$$

is still of the CCSD form.

### 19.7 Local MP2

One can use localized (Wannier-) orbitals instead of canonical ones in the MPn theory. Problem: Fock operator is not diagonal.
First order wave function correction satisfies $\psi^{(1)}=\varphi_{0}-\hat{R}_{0} \hat{W} \varphi_{0}$, i.e.

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left(\hat{H}_{0}-E^{(0)}\right) \psi^{(1)}=-\hat{W} \varphi_{0} \tag{647}
\end{equation*}
$$

Let $\varphi_{0}=\Psi_{0}$, the Hartree-Fock wave function written in localized orbitals and the first order wave function correction is

$$
\begin{equation*}
\psi^{(1)}=\sum_{a b} \sum_{r s} T_{r s}^{a b} \Psi_{a b}^{r s} \tag{648}
\end{equation*}
$$

with $r, s$ localized virtual orbitals.

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sum_{a b r s}\left(\hat{H}_{0}-E^{(0)}\right)\left|\Psi_{a b}^{r s}\right\rangle T_{r s}^{a b}=-\hat{W}\left|\Psi_{0}\right\rangle \tag{649}
\end{equation*}
$$

Multiplication from left by $\left\langle\Psi_{c d}^{t u}\right|$ leads to the linear equations

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sum_{a b r s}\left\langle\Psi_{c d}^{t u}\right| \hat{H}_{0}-E^{(0)}\left|\Psi_{a b}^{r s}\right\rangle T_{r s}^{a b}=-\left\langle\Psi_{c d}^{t u}\right| \hat{W}\left|\Psi_{0}\right\rangle \tag{650}
\end{equation*}
$$

which can be solved directly for the unknown amplitudes, $T_{r s}^{a b}$, and the MP2 energy is

$$
\begin{equation*}
E^{(\mathrm{LMP2})}=\sum_{a b r s} T_{r s}^{a b}\left\langle\Psi_{0}\right| \hat{W}\left|\Psi_{a b}^{r s}\right\rangle \tag{651}
\end{equation*}
$$

Advantage: linear scaling correlation method!
Of course, this is a generalization of the canonical MP2 result, where the linear equations can be solved analytically, since

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left\langle\Psi_{c d}^{t u}\right| \hat{H}_{0}-E^{(0)}\left|\Psi_{a b}^{r s}\right\rangle=\delta_{a c} \delta_{b d} \delta_{r t} \delta_{s u}\left(\varepsilon_{t}+\varepsilon_{u}-\varepsilon_{b}-\varepsilon_{c}\right) \tag{652}
\end{equation*}
$$

is a diagonal matrix.

